Foreword

Thank you for choosing BYD. To better use and maintain the vehicle, please read this manual carefully before use and keep it for future reference.

Special instructions: BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd. recommends that you choose genuine spare parts and use, maintain, and repair the vehicle in accordance with this manual. The use of non-genuine spare parts to replace or modify the vehicle will affect the performance of the entire vehicle, especially its safety and durability. Vehicle damage and performance issues caused thereby will not be covered by the warranty. In addition, vehicle modifications may also violate national laws and regulations and local government regulations.

Thank you for choosing BYD. Your valuable comments and suggestions are welcome. To enjoy better services, please provide your accurate contact information. If there is any change to the information, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in a timely manner to update the information in the system. You are also advised to pay attention to the relevant national laws and regulations and local policies, and register the vehicle as soon as possible; otherwise vehicle registration may fail.

The descriptions marked with the asterisk (*) in this manual are specific to only some model configurations, and applicable only when the vehicle has these configurations. If there is any difference with the vehicle you purchased, the configuration of the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Pay attention to the “WARNING”, "CAUTION”, and "REMINDER" symbols in this manual, and follow the instructions carefully to avoid injury or damage. These symbols are defined as follows:

WARNING

Items that must be observed to ensure personal safety.

CAUTION

Items that must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle.

REMINDER

Items that must be observed to facilitate maintenance.

 is a safety mark to indicate an operation that should not be performed or an event that should not happen.

This manual is expected to help you use the product correctly, and does not provide any description of the configuration and software version of this product. For details about the product configuration and software version, please refer to the contract (if any) related to this product, or consult the dealer who sold the product to you.

Everyone has the responsibility to protect the environment. Please use this vehicle properly and dispose of any waste and cleaning materials according to the corresponding local laws and regulations.

Copyright © BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

No part of this document may be reproduced, copied, stored, translated, or transmitted electronically or in any other form without prior written consent and authorization of BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd.

All rights reserved

Figure Index

Exterior.....7

Dashboard..... 8

Interior..... 9

Doors..... 10

Safety

Seat Belts.....12

Seat Belt Overview..... 12

Using Seat Belts.....12

Airbags..... 15

Airbag Overview..... 15

Airbag Types..... 16

Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions.....18

Child Restraint Systems..... 22

Child Restraint Systems..... 22

Working Modes of Dual-Mode.....25

Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode.....25

Selecting Working Mode of Dual-Mode System..... 27

Working Mode Precautions of Dual-Mode System..... 28

Anti-theft Alarm System.....30

Anti-theft Alarm System.....30

Data Collection and Processing..... 31

Data Collection and Processing.....31

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster..... 36

Instrument Cluster View.....36

Instrument Cluster Indicators.....37

Controller Operation

Doors and Keys.....50

Keys.....50

Locking/Unlocking Doors..... 54

Smart Access and Start System..... 60

Child Protection Lock.....61

Seats.....62

Seat Precautions..... 62

Adjusting Front Seats..... 63

Folding Rear Seats.....64

Head Supports.....65

Steering Wheel..... 66

Steering Wheel Switches.....66

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....68

Wipers..... 69

Wiper Switch.....69

Replacing Wiper Blades..... 70

Rearview Mirrors..... 71

Interior Rearview Mirror.....71

Side Mirrors.....72

Switches..... 72

Light Switches..... 72

Driver's Door Switches..... 74

Passenger Side Window Switches..... 75

Hazard Warning Light Switch.....76

Interior Light Switch.....76

Cargo Box Light Switch..... 77

Using and Driving

Charging/Discharging.....80

Charging Instructions.....80

Charging.....84

Discharging Instructions..... 89

Target SOC Setting..... 93
Charging Port Immobilizer System.....94
Driving Range Display*.....96
Batteries..... 96
High-Voltage Battery..... 96
Low-Voltage Battery (12 V).....98
Usage Precautions..... 100
Break-in Period.....100
Trailer Towing.....100
Driving Safety Precautions.....110
Vehicle Use Suggestions..... 111
Fuel..... 112
Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life.....113
Carrying Luggage..... 114
Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning.....117
Fire Prevention.....117
Starting and Driving.....119
Starting the Vehicle..... 119
Driving.....120
Driving Mode.....122
Driving with Low Fuel Consumption.... 129
Gear Shift Controls.....130
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).....132
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH).....135
Key Points for Driving.....137
Driver Assistance..... 140
Driver Assistance System..... 140
Driving Assist..... 146
Front Safety Assist.....156
Side Safety Assist.....167
Rear Safety Assist..... 175
Lighting.....180
Head-up Display (W-HUD)*..... 182
Driver Monitoring Systems (DMS)*..... 183
Child Presence Detection (CPD)*.....184
Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System..... 185
Acoustic Vehicle Alert System (AVAS)... 187
Around View Monitor (AVM)*.....188
Parking Assist System..... 190
Driving Safety Systems.....193

In-Vehicle Devices

Infotainment System..... 200
Infotainment Touchscreen.....200
Infotainment System.....201
Settings..... 202
Gestures and Responses..... 202
OTA Updates*.....203
Voice Assistant.....203
Bluetooth..... 204
My Car*.....204
Phone Projection*..... 205
A/C System..... 210
A/C Panel.....210
A/C Operation Interface..... 211
Function Definition..... 212
Vents..... 215
Storage..... 215
Door Bin..... 215
Glove Box..... 215
Center Console Cubby.....216
Seatback Pockets..... 216
Glasses Case..... 216
Cup Holder.....216
Other Devices..... 217
Sun Visor..... 217

Grab Handles.....217
USB Ports.....218
SD Card Slot.....218
On-board Power Supply.....219
Wireless Phone Charger*..... 219

Maintenance

Maintenance Information.....224
Maintenance Cycle and Items.....224
Regular Maintenance..... 237
Regular Maintenance..... 237
Corrosion Prevention.....238
Paint Maintenance Tips.....239
Exterior Cleaning..... 240
Interior Cleaning.....241
Self-Maintenance.....243
Self-Maintenance..... 243
Vehicle Storage.....245
Hood..... 246
Engine..... 247
Cooling System.....248
Braking System.....249
Washer..... 249
Fuel Filter.....250
A/C System.....250
Wiper Blades Maintenance..... 251
Tire..... 251
Fuses..... 254

When Faults Occur

When Faults Occur..... 258
Reflective Vest..... 258
If Smart Key Battery is Exhausted.....258
If a High Voltage Fault Occurs..... 258
If the Vehicle Cannot be Powered on... 258
If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving.....259
If the Engine is Overheated.....259
If the Vehicle Needs Towing.....260
If a Tire Goes Flat.....262
Using the Spare Tire.....263

Specifications

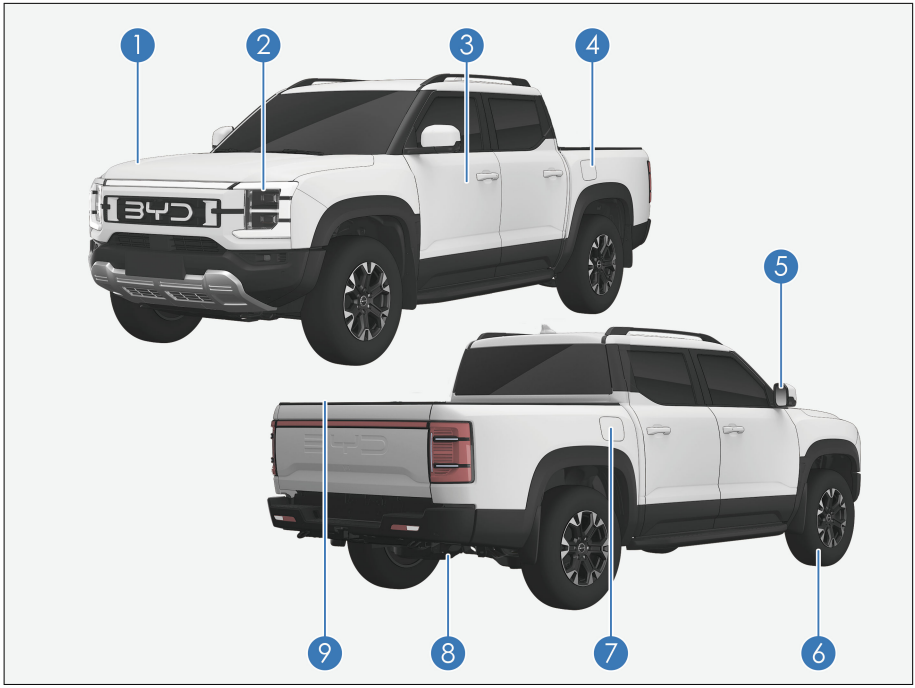
Vehicle Data..... 272
Vehicle Data.....272
Information.....277
Vehicle Identification..... 277
Warning Labels.....278
Transponder Mounting..... 280
Declarations of Conformity..... 280
Declarations of Conformity.....280

Abbreviations

Abbreviations.....289

Figure Index

Exterior



1 Hood ***P246***

Engine Oil ***P247***

Cooling System ***P248***

Braking System ***P249***

Washer ***P249***

2 Light Switches ***P72***

3 Unlocking/Locking Doors ***P55***

4 Refueling ***P112***

5 Power Side Mirrors ***P72***

6 Tires ***P251***

If a Tire Goes Flat ***P262***

7 Check Before Charging ***P84***

Using Mode 2 Charging Cable ***P84***

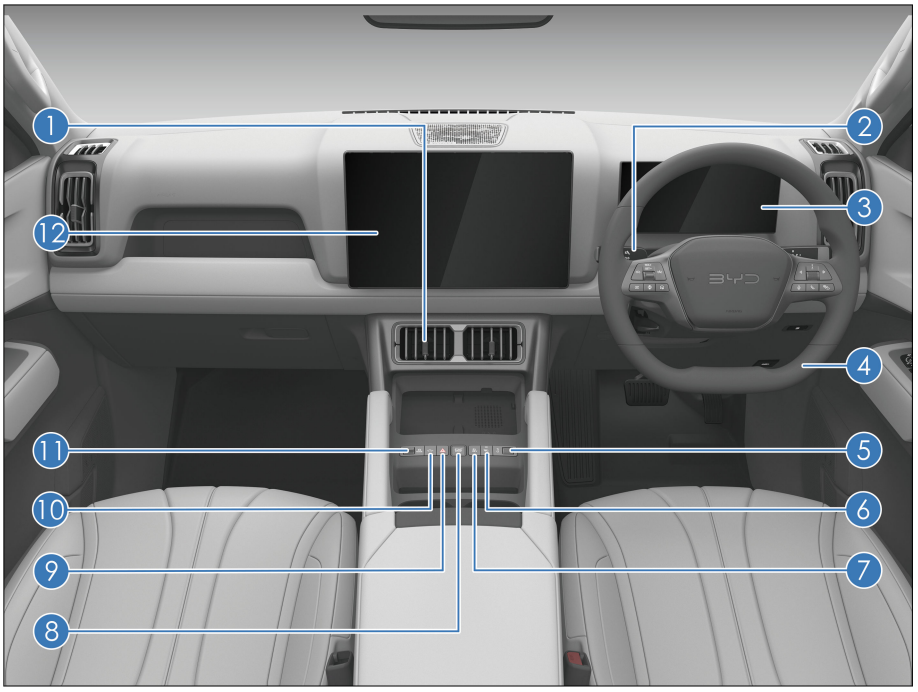
Using AC Charging Piles ***P86***

Using DC Charging Piles* ***P87***

8 Replacement of the Spare Tire ***P265***

9 Tailgate ***P57***

Dashboard



1 Front Vents ***P215***

2 Front Windshield Wipers and Washer ***P69***

3 Instrument Cluster ***P37***

4 Steering Wheel ***P66***

5 Scroll Button ***P200***

6 Front Windshield Defroster ***P210***

7 EV/HEV Mode Switch Button ***P27***

8 START/STOP Button ***P119***

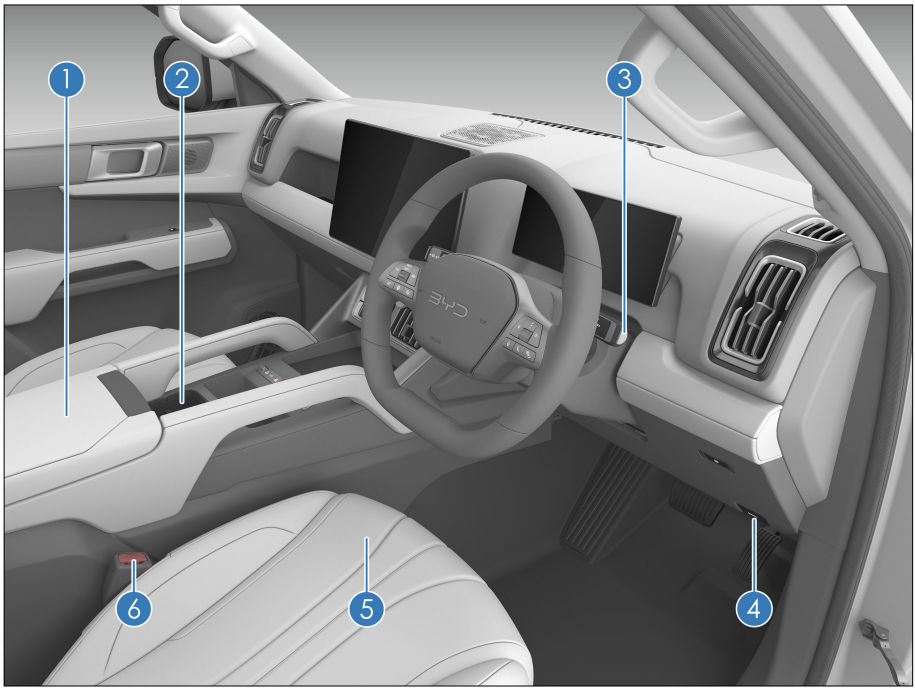
9 Hazard Warning Light ***P76***

10 Tailgate Switch ***P57***

11 Driving Mode Switch Button ***P122***

12 Infotainment Touchscreen ***P200***

Interior



1 Center Console Cubby ***P216***

2 Cup Holder ***P216***

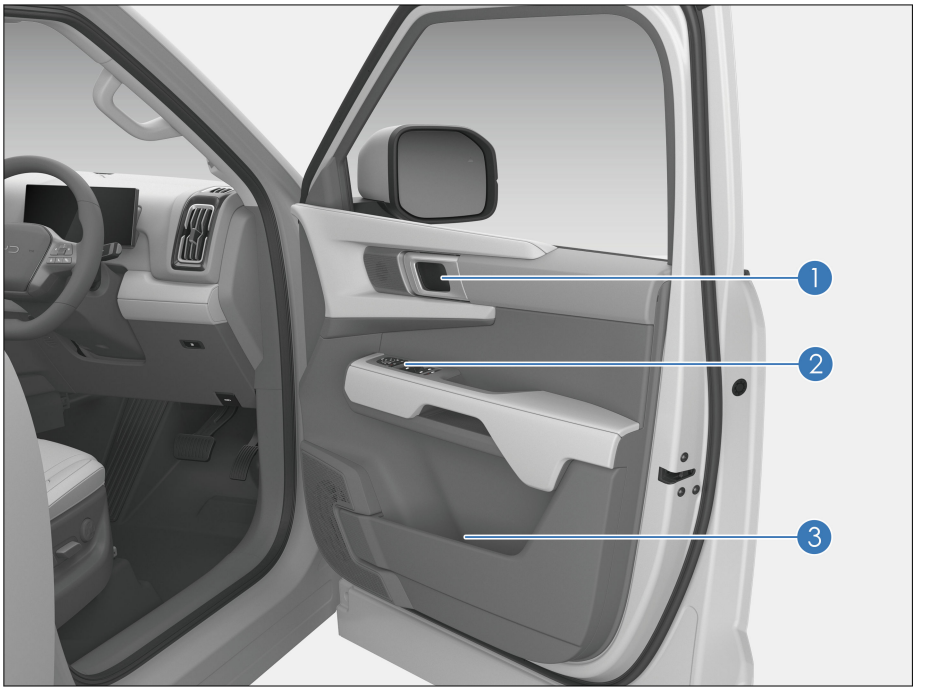
3 Gear Shift Controls ***P130***

4 Hood Handle ***P246***

5 Seats ***P62***

6 Using Seat Belts ***P12***

Doors



1 Interior Door Handle ***P54***

2 Power Window Switches ***P74***

Central Locking ***P75***

Side Mirror Adjustment ***P72***

3 Door Bins ***P215***

01 SAFETY

Seat Belts..... 12
Airbags..... 15
Child Restraint Systems..... 22
Working Modes of Dual-Mode..... 25
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 30
Data Collection and Processing..... 31

Seat Belts

Seat Belt Overview

Studies have shown that proper use of seat belts can significantly reduce casualties in emergency braking, sudden steering or collisions. Please read the following information carefully and observe it strictly.

WARNING

- Before driving, make sure all occupants are properly buckled up to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.
- The seat belts are designed primarily for adults and are not intended for children. Make sure to choose an appropriate child restraint system according to your child's age and size (see ***P12*** in this chapter).
- If a seat belt is damaged or malfunctions, immediately contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.

- All occupants should always fasten their seat belts while in the vehicle to avoid personal injury or death in case of accident.
- Children must never ride on an occupan's lap. This will render the children not adequately protected in case of emergency braking or a collision.

Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) Function

- This vehicle is equipped with emergency locking seat belts. During the sharp turn, emergency braking and collision process, or when the occupant leans forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position to protect the occupant.
- When the vehicle travels smoothly, seat belts are pulled out and retracted as the occupants move slowly and smoothly, allowing the occupants to move freely.
- If the seatbelt locks due to rapid retraction feed it back slightly, or pull it out a short distance and then retract it. The seatbelt can then be pulled out normally.

Pretensioner and Force Limiter Function*

When a severe front collision occurs and the triggering conditions of the pretensioner are met, the pretensioner quickly retracts part of the seat belt and locks it to improve the protection of the occupant. The force limiter limits the seat-belt restraint force to the occupant's body to a certain extent so as to avoid injury to the occupant due to an excessive restraint force.

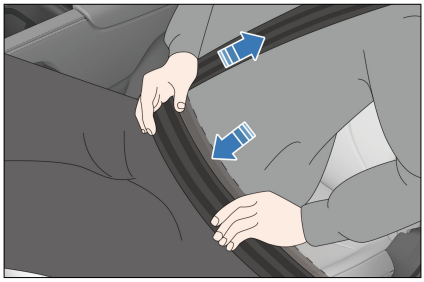
Using Seat Belts

1. Adjust the seat position and seatback angle (see "Adjusting Front Seat with Power").
2. Adjust the position of the three-point seat belt.

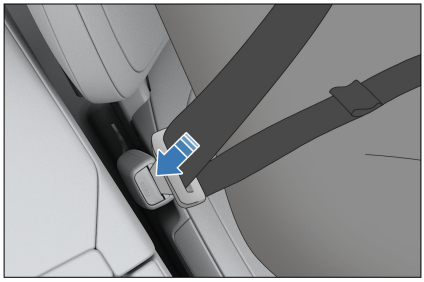
- Keeping a proper sitting posture, pull the seat belt out so that it is diagonally across the chest. The belt should not

go under the arm or across the back of the neck.

- Keep the lap section of the belt as close as possible to the hip and do not keep it on the waist.



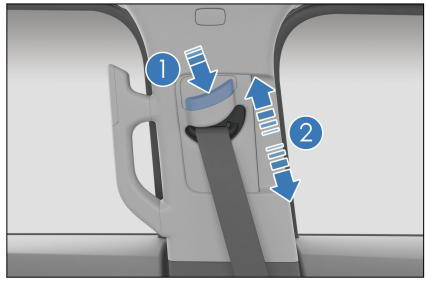
3. Insert the latch into the buckle until it clicks, and then pull it back to make sure it is firmly locked. Do not fasten the belt with any part of the strap twisted.



4. Adjust the height of the (front) seat belts for optimum comfort and protection.

① Press the adjuster release button.

② Move the adjuster up or down to the intended position and release it.



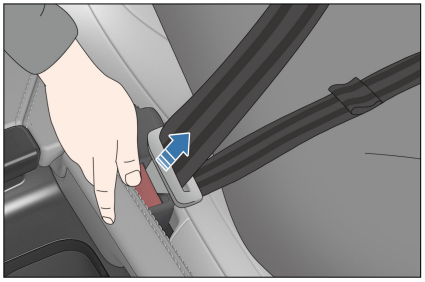
5. Pull the shoulder belt firmly to check that the adjuster is locked.

WARNING

- The shoulder belt should cross the center of the shoulder. The seat belt should be far from the neck and not liable to slip from the shoulder; otherwise, it cannot function well in the event of emergency braking or accident and may even cause severe injury.
- The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury due to the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The seat belt should be fitted tight to the body for better protection.

6. Unlock the seat belt.

- Press the red unlock button on the buckle. The latch plate pops out, and the seat belt automatically retracts.
- If the seat belt does not retract smoothly and automatically, pull it out and check whether it is twisted.



WARNING

- One seat belt is for one occupant only. Do not allow multiple occupants (including children) to share one seat belt.
- Avoid traveling with the seatback leaning too far back. The seat belt protection performs best when the seatback is upright.
- Make sure that no seat belt or its spring bolt/buckle becomes pressed by the door; otherwise, the seat belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belts regularly for cuts, wear, looseness, and other abnormalities. If any problem is found, immediately contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.
- Do not remove, disassemble or modify the seat belts without permission.
- After an accident, have the seat belts checked at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. If the pretensioner function is activated, the seat belt must be replaced.
- Use an approved model whenever you replace the seat belt.
- In the event of a serious accident, even if there is no

WARNING

apparent damage, the seat belt should be replaced along with the seat assembly. The airbag system should also be thoroughly inspected.

- Pregnant women need to fasten the seat belts properly and position the lapbelt as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury from the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The method of wearing a rear seat belt is the same as that for a front seat belt. For normal functioning of the rear seat belt, ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle during use. The driver should ensure that all occupants are wearing seat belts before driving the vehicle.
- Do not insert foreign objects such as coins and clips into the buckle as they prevent proper connection between the latch and buckle.

Seat Belt Reminders

If any occupant has not buckled up after the vehicle is started, visual and audible alarms go on and continue until the corresponding seat belt is properly fastened.

- Seat belt reminder indicator

  Any unfastened seat belt triggers this indicator to light up and flash as required.

- Unfastened belt display

  The indicator for the seat with unfastened seat belt lights up on the instrument cluster, and is steady on in case of abnormal conditions in the vehicle.

- Unfastened seat belt reminder

  If any vehicle occupant has not buckled up after the ignition is switched on, the seat belt reminder indicator and the indicator associated with the corresponding seat light up. If the seat belt remains unfastened while driving, in addition to the reminder indicator, an audible alarm is given to alert the driver and the occupants.

- When the driver and passengers have buckled up, the seat belt reminder indicator turns off and all indicators displayed for the corresponding seats turn off on the instrument cluster.

WARNING

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Do not use the corresponding seat until the functions return to normal.
- When driving, make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.

Airbags

Airbag Overview

- Airbags are a part of the supplemental restraint system (SRS) and also a supplement to seats and seat belts. When the vehicle is involved in a serious collision and the airbag system meets its deployment conditions, relevant airbags will rapidly deploy and, along with seat belts, provide additional protection for heads and chests of the occupants to reduce the risk of personal injury or even death.
- Airbags are divided into front and side types according to the type of collision. The front airbags include a driver airbag and a front passenger airbag, while the side airbags include front seat side airbags, front far side airbag and side curtain airbags.
- As an integral part of the vehicle's passive safety protection system, the airbag system does not replace seat belts, and must be used in combination with seat belts to maximize protection.

WARNING

- Occupants must sit in a proper position to maximize the protection provided by seat belts and the airbag system.
- Do not disassemble or assemble airbag components.
- Non-BYD genuine seat covers may worsen the airbag performance or result in injury.
- Do not place anything between the side airbag and the occupant.
- Do not apply excessive force to the side of seats equipped with side airbags.
- After a crash, even if the airbag did not deploy and the pretensioner did not lock the seat belt, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible to ensure that the airbag system functions correctly.

Airbag fault warning light

- The airbag system is monitored by the ECU and has a self-diagnostic function. The system status is indicated by

the warning light on the instrument cluster.

- With the ignition on, if the airbag warning light stays on for about five seconds and then disappears, the system is running smoothly.

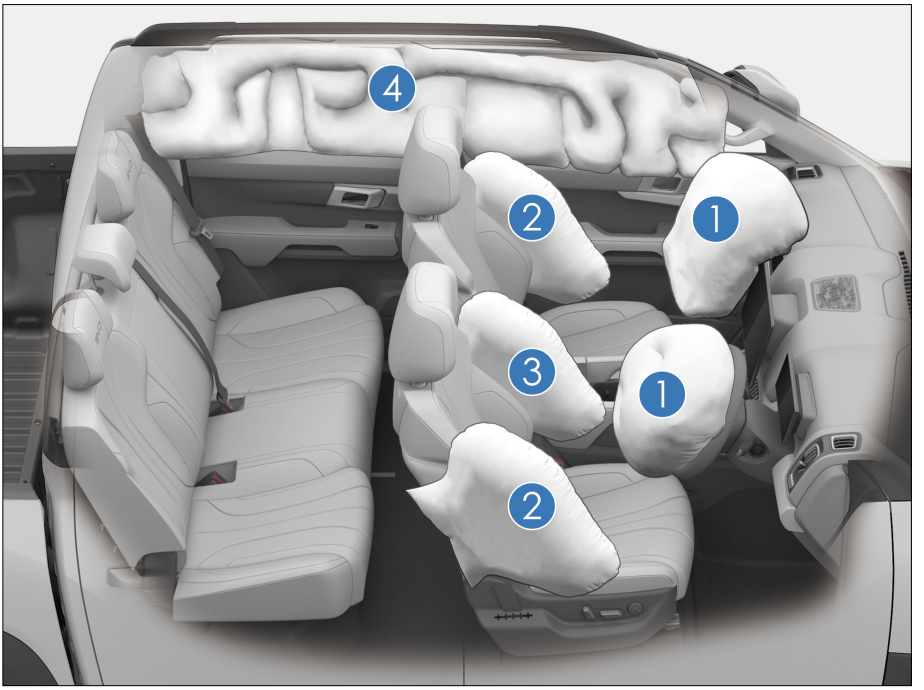
WARNING

- The airbag warning light stays on in the presence of certain system faults. If this light stays on, head to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible. Otherwise, airbags may not work properly.

WARNING

- If the vehicle is ingressed with water (wet carpet or vehicle submerged in water) or damaged by water, do not start the vehicle and the low-voltage battery needs to be disconnected. Otherwise, the airbags may deploy, resulting in serious injury or death.

Airbag Types



① Driver and front passenger airbags
② Front seat side airbags
③ Front far side airbag
④ Side curtain airbags

Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

- The driver airbag is inside the steering wheel and the front passenger airbag is inside the dashboard, both marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to reduce the risk of injury.

Front airbag deployment

- In moderate to severe frontal crashes, the sensor sends a signal to the ECU to trigger the front airbags when detecting a sharp deceleration.
- When there is a frontal crash, the seat belt secures the occupant's lower body and torso in place. The airbag cushions and protects the occupant's head and chest.
- When the severity of the impact does not reach the airbag deployment threshold, seat belts provide enough protection.
- The front airbag deflates immediately after inflation, without affecting the driver's vision and ability to operate the steering wheel or other controls.
- A loud noise will be heard when the airbag deploys. It will not cause injury, but it may cause tinnitus or temporary deafness.
- A cloud of dust from the airbag surface may come off when the airbag deploys. Although such powder is non-toxic, individuals with respiratory problem might experience some temporary discomfort.

WARNING

- No accessories, such as telephone holders, cups, and ashtrays, can be installed on airbag covers or within their impact range.

WARNING

Otherwise, airbag deployment will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Front Far Side Airbag

- The front far side airbag is mounted on the inner side of the driver's seatback and marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the far side airbag deploys to protect the heads and shoulders of the driver and the front passenger.

WARNING

- If the seatbacks get wet from rain or splashes, the far side airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not cover or replace the seatback covers by yourself. Unsuitable seatback cover replacements or covers may prevent airbag deployment in a collision.

CAUTION

- If the impact occurs on the front passenger's side, the far side airbag deploys even if there is no passenger in the seat.
- For optimum protection from the driver far side airbag, the occupant must have the seat belt fastened and sit in an upright position.

Seat Side Airbags

- The front seat side airbags are mounted on the outside of front seatbacks, marked with "AIRBAG" at

both sides. When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to protect the chest of the occupant on the impacted side.

WARNING

- If the seatbacks get wet from rain or splashes, the side airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not cover or replace seatback covers on you own. Unsuitable seatback cover replacements or covers may prevent airbag deployment in a collision.

CAUTION

- In the event of a side impact, the airbag on the impacted side deploys when the airbag system meets its deployment conditions.

Side Curtain Airbags

- The left and right side curtain airbags are mounted at the junctions of the side wall and the ceiling, marked with "AIRBAG" on the B and C pillars. When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the side curtain airbag deploys to protect the head of the occupants.

CAUTION

- For optimum curtain airbag protection, the occupant must be buckled up and sit in an upright position.

Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions

Airbag Triggering Conditions

- Airbag triggering conditions: The airbag system may be triggered in certain collisions. Whether a vehicle collision will trigger the airbag(s) is decided by factors such as the amount of collision energy, accident type, collision angle, obstacles and vehicle speed.
- The airbag system does not always work in any accident, and generally it will not be triggered in the event of a minor frontal collision, rear collision or rollover. In this case, the driver and passengers are protected by their properly fastened seat belts.
- Determinants of airbag system triggering: The electronic control unit (ECU) captures the deceleration curve and other signals of the vehicle during the crash. If they are lower than the threshold values set in the ECU, the airbag system will not be triggered even if the vehicle is seriously deformed in the accident.
- The ECU of the BYD airbag system has been set up with considerations of common misuse and road conditions. However, due to the increasing changes in causes and forms of vehicle collisions, for your safety, please strictly follow this user manual, use the vehicle correctly, and avoid its misuse. Otherwise, there is no guarantee that the airbags will achieve their expected effect.

Rollover Protection System*

- If the vehicle experiences a side rollover accident that triggers the

rollover protection system, the seat side airbags, side curtain airbags, far-side airbag, and seat belt pretensioners will be activated to protect the occupants and mitigate potential injuries.

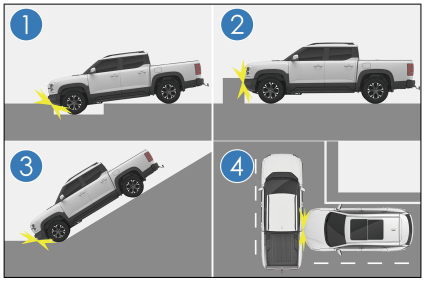
Cases When Airbags May Be Deployed

① The vehicle's nose hits the ground when crossing a deep groove.

② The vehicle hits a bump or curbstone.

③ The vehicle's nose hits the ground when going down a steep slope.

④ One side of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.



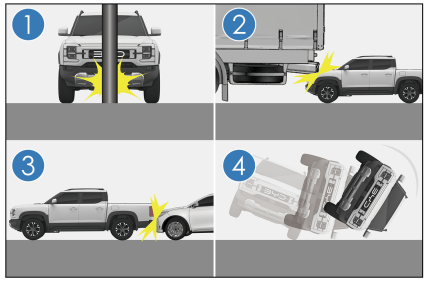
Cases When Airbags May Not Be Deployed

① The vehicle hits a concrete column, tree, or other slim objects.

② The vehicle goes under a truck or another large vehicle.

③ The tail of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.

④ The vehicle rolls over.

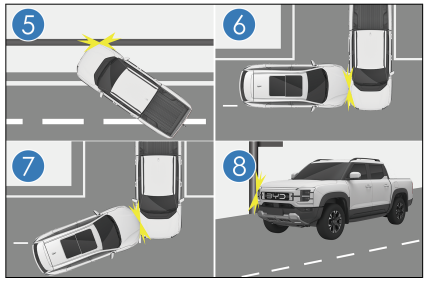


⑤ The vehicle hits a wall or a vehicle at a side other than the front side.

⑥ Parts other than the passenger compartment receive side impact.

⑦ The lateral side of the vehicle is hit diagonally.

⑧ The lateral side of the vehicle hits a columnar object.



WARNING

- Airbags are designed for specific models. Any changes to suspension, tire size, bumpers, chassis and factory-equipped devices may adversely affect the airbag system. Users must not use any parts of the airbag system on other car models; doing so may lead to failure of the airbag system.
- Drivers should maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between their chest and the steering wheel, in order for the system to

WARNING

provide the most effective driver protection.

- Fasten your seat belt and sit properly while the vehicle is in motion. If the seat belt is not fastened, and the occupant is leaning forward or sitting improperly, airbag deployment can increase the risk of injury.
- Do not install, place, affix or cover any accessories near airbags or their deployment areas, such as the the cover of the steering wheel, surface of the dashboard at and near the location of the airbag, windows, pillars, and ceiling. Otherwise, serious injury or even casualty may be caused in case of an accident.
- Clean airbag surfaces with a dry or damp cloth, without applying too much pressure.
- A child is not to be seated in the front passenger seat, nor are they to ride sitting on a front passenger's lap, to prevent serious injury or even casualty caused by airbag deployment in an accident.
- Side airbags and side curtain airbags deploy quickly with high impact forces. Occupants must not lean against the doors of vehicles equipped with these airbags while these vehicles are in motion. Failure to do so could result in serious injury or even death.
- When transferring vehicle ownership, make sure to pass on all of the vehicle's documents and keep the new ownership

WARNING

informed of airbag conditions and replacement dates.

- Do not modify or replace seats or trims of the seats with side airbags. These changes may prevent normal deployment of side airbags, and thereby cause airbag system failure or unintended deployment of side airbags, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Do not disassemble or repair the A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim or C-pillar trim, which contain side curtain airbags. These changes can cause failure of the airbag system or accidental deployment of curtain airbags, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Do not change any component of the airbag system, including any corresponding label. It is recommended that any operation done to the airbags be performed by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Airbags can only provide one-time accident protection. Once the airbag is triggered or damaged, the airbag system must be replaced.
- Follow safety regulations and procedures related to the scrapping of parts of the vehicle or its airbag system.
- The airbag system has strong anti-interference and anti-disturbance resistance to electromagnetic fields around it. However, to avoid accidents, do not use the vehicle in an electromagnetic

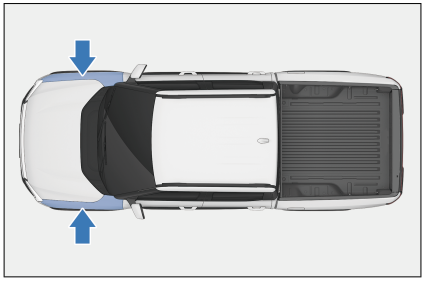
WARNING

environment that violates national regulations.

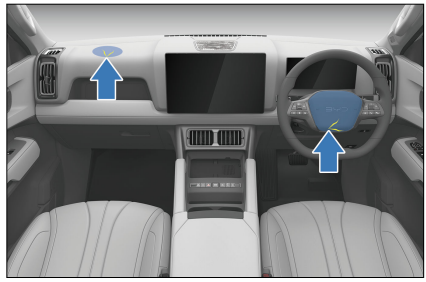
- The airbag system of this vehicle is designed with full consideration of common misuses and road conditions. However, in order to avoid accidents, do not have the bottom of the vehicle impacted or drive roughly in harsh road conditions.
- This vehicle's airbag system has been fully verified to seamlessly match the vehicle's original wiring harness system. Any wiring harness modification or alteration may cause the airbags to deploy mistakenly under normal conditions or fail to deploy in the event of a collision.

It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately if any of the following situations occurs.

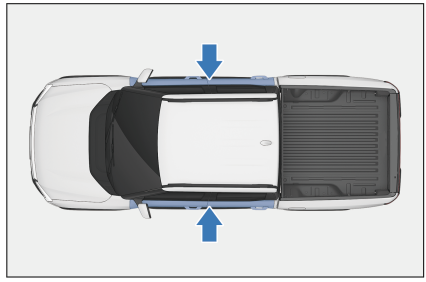
- The airbag has deployed.
- Instrument cluster airbags warning light lights up abnormally.
- There is a collision with the front of the vehicle (highlighted area shown), but the airbags do not deploy.



- The airbag cover (highlighted area shown) has been scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.



- There is a collision with the vehicle door (highlighted area shown) that is not adequate to cause the airbag to deploy.



- Airbags need to be removed, disassembled, installed or repaired.
- The surface of the seat with a side airbag is scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Decorative (liner) parts with built-in curtain airbags at roof beam and C-pillar are scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.

Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint Systems

Child restraint systems provide effective protection to children in an accident. For child safety, carefully read the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and this manual before installing a child restraint.

WARNING

- Never carry a child on your lap while travelling.
- An appropriate child restraint system must be used for your child.
- Please follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system and in this manual to make sure the child restraint is properly installed in the vehicle.
- After the child restraint is dismounted from the seat, store it safely in your vehicle.
- Failure to follow the instruction provided with the child restraint and in this manual may cause injuries and even death to your child in an accident.
- Children are not allowed to stand in the vehicle or kneel on the seat when the vehicle is moving to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or collision.

Children must be secured in a suitable child restraint in a comfortable and safe way when traveling in the vehicle. Make sure that the child restraint is positioned, mounted, and used correctly.

Important considerations for selecting a child restraint

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the seating position.
- The child restraint must be homologated by ECE R44/ECE R129.

WARNING

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat.

Child Restraint System Anchorages

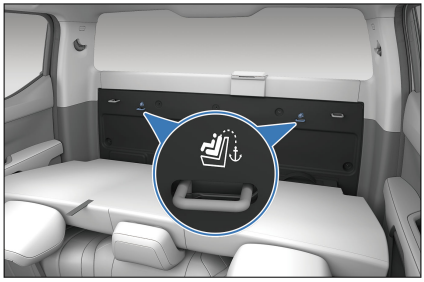
The vehicle is equipped with International Standards Organization Fix (ISOFIX). Secure the top tether when installing the child restraint system.

Rear outboard seat

- The rear outboard seats are equipped with ISOFIX anchorages. (A label indicating the anchoring position is attached to the seat.)



- The outboard rear seats are equipped with top tether strap anchorages on the rear bulkhead, behind the rear seat.



REMINDER

- The lower anchorages are located in the gap between the seat cushion and the seatback.

Installing Child Restraint Systems

1. Check the position of the special anchorage and install the child restraint on the seat.



WARNING

- When using the lower anchoring device, make sure that no foreign objects are around the anchoring point and that the seat belt is not stuck behind the child restraint; make sure that the child restraint is securely fixed. Otherwise, emergency braking or an accident may result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.

WARNING

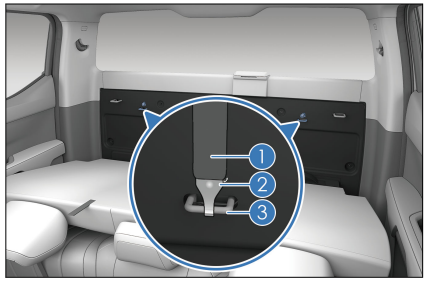
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

2. Lift the head support, unlock the seatback strap, turn the seatback forward at an certain angle, and engage the hook tightly to the anchor support under the rear windshield. Then, lock the seatback and tighten the top tether to ensure the tether strap is attached securely.

① Top tether

② Snap hook

③ Anchor support



CAUTION

- Push/Pull the child restraint in different directions to ensure it is securely installed.
- If the driver's seat obstructs the correct installation of the CRS, install it on the seat behind the front passenger seat.

3. Adjust the head support to a proper position.

CAUTION

- Push/Pull the child restraint in different directions to ensure it is securely installed.
- If the driver's seat obstructs the correct installation of the CRS, install it on the seat behind the front passenger seat.
- Where applicable to use a top tether strap with the child restraint system, ensure the strap is routed through the hole in the head support before attaching and tensioning the strap to the anchor support.

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the seat protected by a front airbag (in the active state), otherwise in the event of an accident, the force of rapid deployment of the front passenger airbag will result in death or serious injury to the child.



WARNING

- Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the rear middle seat.
- Do not allow children to play with seat belts, otherwise, this could result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.

WARNING

Always follow the instructions below when using a child restraint on a rear seat:

- If there is no front passenger, the front passenger seat can be adjusted to make sure there is enough space for the rear child seat.
- The head support can be adjusted or even removed to ensure that the vehicle seatback can safely support the child restraint system.
- When a child restraint is not equipped with the seatback, never remove the head support from the vehicle and be sure to adjust it to the locking position.

Seat belt, ISOFIX or i-Size CRS installing options in the vehicle:

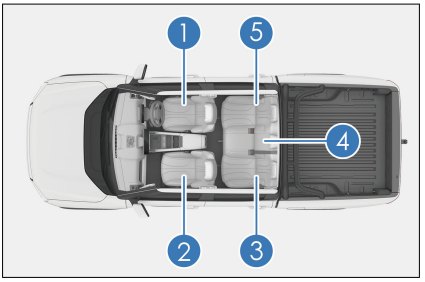
① Driver seat

② Front passenger seat

③ Rear left seat

④ Rear center seat

⑤ Rear right seat

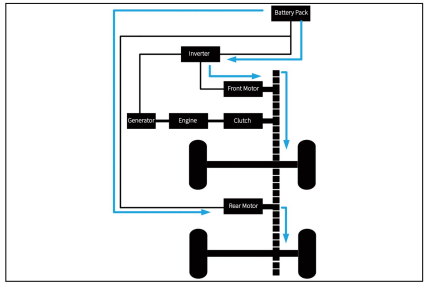


Type	Seating Position				
	1	2	3 [a]	4 [a]	5 [a]
Seating position suitable for universal belt	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
i-Size seating position	No	No	No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward-facing fixture	No	No	R1/R2X/R2 /R3	No	R1/R2X/R2 /R3
Largest suitable forward-facing fixture	No	No	F2X/F2/F3	No	F2X/F2/F3
Largest suitable booster fixture	No	No	B2/B3	No	B2/B3

[a] If needed, adjust or even remove the head support. The front seats can be adjusted to ensure the child is not in contact with them.

Working Modes of Dual-Mode

Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode



EV—Pure Electric Mode

- In EV mode, the high-voltage battery provides electricity to the motor to drive the vehicle in a variety of working conditions, such as starting, reversing, idling, accelerating, and driving at a constant speed.

REMINDER

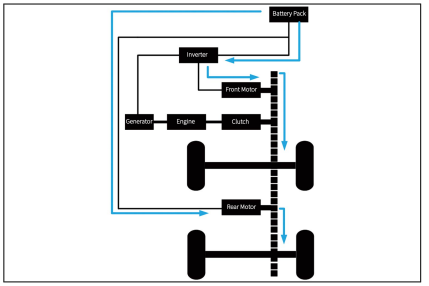
- The vehicle may switch to HEV mode automatically under operating conditions such as rapid acceleration, high vehicle speed, grade climbing, too high or too low temperature, or low SOC level. Switch to EV mode manually if needed when EV conditions are met. It is suggested to use HEV mode when high-voltage battery

REMINDER

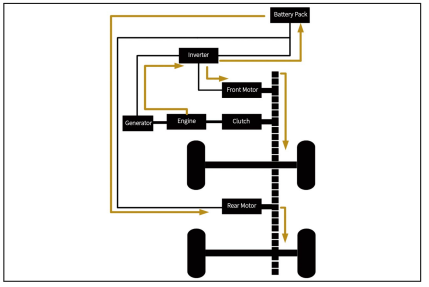
temperature is too high or too low.

HEV—Dual-Mode

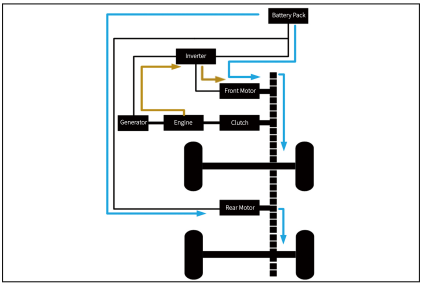
- In HEV mode, when high SOC or low power is required, the engine does not start and the vehicle prioritizes EV mode.



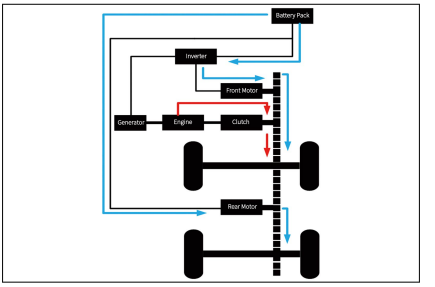
- In HEV mode, when low SOC or high power is required, the engine starts and operates in series for better dynamic.
  - In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity for battery charging and motor working.



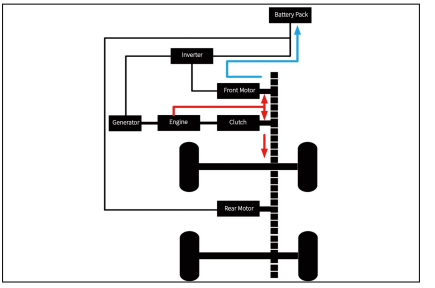
  - In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity and the battery discharges for drive motor working.



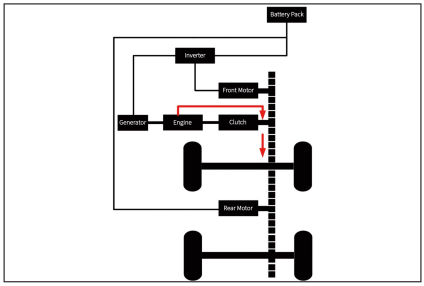
- In HEV mode, when the vehicle is traveling at medium or high speeds, the engine starts to operate in parallel under some working conditions to improve fuel economy:
  - In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor rests.



  - In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor generates electricity for energy recycling.

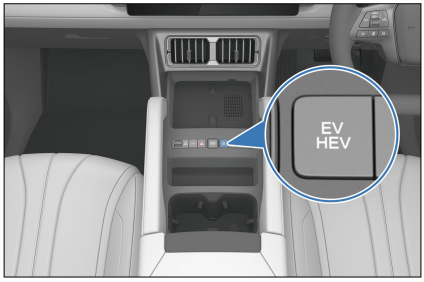


  - In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor rests.

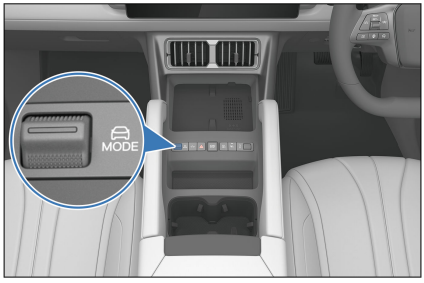


Selecting Working Mode of Dual-Mode System

- Press the button shown in the illustration to switch the "EV/HEV" mode.



- Use Mode button to switch driving modes.



EV-ECO Drive Mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the MODE button until the ECO indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in Economy (ECO) mode to minimize power consumption.

EV-NORMAL Drive Mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the MODE button until the NORMAL indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in NORMAL mode to balance comfort and power consumption.

EV-SPORT Drive Mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the MODE button until the SPORT indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in Sport (SPORT) mode to ensure better dynamic performance.

HEV-ECO Drive Mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the MODE button until the ECO indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in ECO mode to provide the best fuel economy.

HEV-NORMAL Drive Mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the MODE button until the NORMAL indicator lights up on the instrument

cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in NORMAL mode to balance comfort and fuel consumption.

HEV-SPORT Drive Mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the MODE button until the SPORT indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in SPORT mode to provide the best dynamic performance.

MAX EV Drive Mode

- This mode meets the demand of "using electricity only without fuel", which ensures the pure electric driving of vehicles to the greatest extent.
- If you need to enter MAX EV mode when the battery SOC is high, press the "EV/HEV" button for about 3s until the "EV" indicator on the instrument cluster shows blue. At this time, the output power is limited to some extent, and when the battery SOC drops to a certain value, the vehicle automatically switches to the "HEV-ECO" mode.

REMINDER

- In "MAX EV" driving mode, the power or speed of the vehicle is limited to some extent. To improve power, you can switch to "EV" or "HEV" mode.

Working Mode Precautions of Dual-Mode System

The vehicle operates under the combination of fuel and electricity. Pay special attention to the followings:

- In low temperature environment, the performance of high-voltage battery will decline. To prevent the high-voltage battery from being damaged, the following protection mechanisms are set:
  - When the temperature is low, the vehicle will limit the charging and discharging power and SOC level.
  - It is recommended to use vehicles in an environment above -20 °C. In case of the above special environment, it is recommended to use the engine to drive the vehicle.
- The best operating temperature of the battery is 25 °C. When the temperature is too high or too low, the battery limits the output power and shortens the purely electric mileage.

Pay attention to high-voltage and high-temperature components

- The high-voltage battery and other high-voltage components of the vehicle are connected by orange cables.

WARNING

- Do not touch the orange cable or the high-voltage battery electrode. Electric shock may cause serious injury or even be life-threatening.
- Please read all warning labels.

- The motor, coolant radiator, and some other components may reach high

temperatures during driving. These parts are attached with warning labels. Please carefully read and follow the instructions on these warning labels.

WARNING

- Do not remove or disassemble any high-voltage parts, otherwise serious or even life-threatening injuries may be caused.
- In case of collision, wading and other situations that may cause damage to the high-pressure system, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to avoid the risk of electric shock.
- Do not continue to use the vehicle to avoid the risk of electric shock if the vehicle gives a warning of electric leakage or a BYD authorized dealer or service provider has diagnosed that the vehicle has electric leakage.
- Do not touch parts with high voltage, so as to avoid electric shock caused by improper operation which causes serious or even life-threatening injuries.

- For the vehicle is driven by gasoline engine and motor, the engine sound may be heard from the engine compartment.
- When the vehicle powers up or down, the sound of the high voltage component (the sound of contactor engagement or disengagement) may be heard under the auxiliary dashboard, which is not a fault.
- If the "OK" indicator lights up, the vehicle can be driven, even if the gasoline engine has not been started (driven by the motor only).
- Be sure to press the "P" button when parking. When "P" or "N" gear is engaged and the SOC is lower than a certain level, the engine may start to charge the high-voltage battery. If the hand-held shift lever is placed in the "N", "R" or "D" gear for too long, it will falsely report that the gear is stuck. Therefore, after the gear is engaged, be sure to release the shift lever. When leaving the vehicle, press the "P" button, take away the key and lock all doors.
- If the low-voltage battery fails and is completely exhausted, even the 12V external power supply cannot be used for jump starts, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- Be sure to turn off the powertrain when leaving the vehicle.
- When leaving the vehicle, be sure to press the "P" button, because when the "OK" indicator lights up but the engine stops, the vehicle can idle at a low speed (the motor can drive).
- When the "OK" indicator light is on, the vehicle will travel at a low speed without depressing the brake pedal if the shift lever is placed in the "R" or "D" gear, so please pay attention.

- It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for the following situations:
  - Vehicle repair or maintenance is required.
  - If the vehicle cannot be repaired due to accident or other reasons.

- The vehicle is being handled because of the use of a sealed hybrid low-voltage battery.

WARNING

- In the event of an accident, perform the following operations to reduce the risk of high-voltage electric leakage.
  - Move the vehicle to a safe place.
  - Depress the brake pedal, press the "P" button, and check that the gear is successfully switched and EPB is engaged.
  - Stop the dual-mode system.
- If the vehicle is severely damaged, there may be a risk of electric shock. To avoid electric shock, do not touch any high-voltage components (such as battery assembly) or cables (in orange) connecting components. If there are uninsulated wires inside or outside the vehicle, do not touch them to avoid electric shock.
- If the liquid leaks into some parts of the vehicle, do not touch the liquid, because it may be the electrolyte of the low-voltage battery. If the fluid contacts the skin or eyes, flush with plenty of water (preferably boric acid solution) and seek medical attention to avoid severe injury.
- If the vehicle catches fire, use a electric fire extinguisher to extinguish the fire. Using only a small amount of water can be dangerous, so use plenty of water (such as a fire hydrant) or wait for the fire brigade.
- If the vehicle needs to be towed, please select the four-wheel off-ground towing. If the wheels touch the ground during towing,

WARNING

the motor may continue to generate electricity, resulting in electric leakage.

Anti-theft Alarm System

Anti-theft Alarm System

Arming the system

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. All occupants get off the vehicle.
3. Lock all doors and the anti-theft alarm system will arm automatically after eight seconds.

Triggering the alarm

- The system, when armed, will raise an alarm with flashing turn signals in any of the following situations:
  - Any door or hood is opened without using the keyless access function of the smart key.
  - Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.

Disarming the system

- Anti-theft alarm can be stopped by:
  - Unlocking the door with a valid smart key.
  - Using the microswitch to unlock the door by carrying a valid smart key.
  - Using a valid NFC key* to unlock the door.
  - Starting the vehicle remotely with a valid smart key.

- Pressing the "START/STOP" button inside the vehicle while carrying a valid smart key.

WARNING

- Do not modify the anti-theft alarm system by means of alteration or addition, otherwise the system may fail.

Data Collection and Processing

Data Collection and Processing

- This section provides you with some important information on how personal data is collected and processed when you use a BYD vehicle.
- For a more detailed overview on data processing, data protection and data subject rights, read the current version of the privacy policy for the vehicle available in the infotainment system (→ → **Privacy**).
- This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR) system. EDR mainly records data in the event of a crash or near-crash (for example, airbag deployment or hitting on a roadside obstacle) to help comprehend the vehicle system operation, such as:
  - Vehicle velocity
  - Tire pressure condition
  - Adaptive cruise control (ACC) system status
  - Whether the seat belt is fastened
- The vehicle records EDR data only when there is a crash or when a near-crash event reaches a certain extent. The EDR does not record any data during the normal driving of the vehicle.
  - The data recorded by the EDR system provides an understanding of the state of the vehicle's safety-related systems when an accident occurs, so that relevant parties can analyze the accident.
  - The EDR data needs to be accessed and read by special equipment. BYD will not disclose your personal data to third parties unless this is legally permissible or you have consented to it. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third-party agencies with professional equipment (such as government agencies) can also read the EDR data if they have access to the vehicle EDR and equipment (for example, they can read the data of SRS control unit to clarify the accident).

Vehicle Data Processing

- Data is collected when the vehicle is used, such as data collected or transmitted by vehicle sensors or control units, which is necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle.
- In some cases, the data is used to support driving (driver assistance systems) or to enable a specific comfort or infotainment function.
- Personal data that is collected and processed mainly include in-vehicle data, remote-services-related data, and other data, as further specified below.

In-vehicle data

Operation data

- When the vehicle is used, various vehicle status data (e.g., speed, battery level, and braking system) or environment (e.g., distance sensors and temperature) data is collected and processed.
- This data is not usually stored, but there are control units, sensors or other components installed in the vehicle that record such data, for example, to record maintenance requirements, error messages, or other information.
- The in-vehicle data will only be stored in the equipment in the vehicle but can be read out via the legally required OBD ("On Board Diagnostics") interface, for example, by BYD authorized dealer or service provider or other third parties.
- In case this access takes place during vehicle maintenance, the information can also be transmitted to BYD engineers for quality assurance, product defect reports, or customer claim verification.

Remote-services-related data

Remote monitoring services

- The vehicle has remote monitoring services. These include remote diagnosis and over-the-air (OTA) updates and upgrades for security and safety purposes (subject to owner's approval).
- These monitoring services serve the following purposes: service provision (remote support/diagnostics), product development, and security/public safety.
- Depending on the country and setup, various vehicle information can be transmitted to BYD's data center in corresponding market for the above purposes, including vehicle location information, vehicle status, such as energy consumption, vehicle speed, gear position, power mode, ESC status, steering system status, battery status, powertrain status, and overall vehicle performance status.

Other

Infotainment system

- Depending on vehicle configuration, data can be added to the infotainment system by the users themselves, such as media data for playing video on the infotainment system, address data for use in the navigation system, or data for use in online services.
- Depending on vehicle configuration, individual settings in and on the vehicle can also be entered.
- Data stored in the vehicle can be deleted at any time.
- BYD has no control over data transferred to third parties (from the use of third party content, in particular as part of online services).

Integration of mobile devices

- Depending on vehicle configurations, mobile devices can be connected and controlled through the vehicle's infotainment system.
- It may be necessary that the device's screen or audio is displayed/played through the infotainment system or transmitted to it.
- Additional data like positioning or vehicle information can be transmitted through applications for use in certain navigation systems, communication, or other third-party services.
- The specific type of data processing depends on the respective function and is controlled by the user or third parties such as the provider of the devices or corresponding services.

Internet access and connected services

- Depending on vehicle configurations, the Internet can be accessed for certain functions or BYD services through the vehicle's infotainment system network devices.
- BYD is not liable for any such services provided by any other party.
- In such cases, please obtain information about the use of data from the provider of the respective online service.

Camera image recording/surrounding area monitoring

- Your vehicle is equipped with a number of cameras/sensors.
- The reason for this is that some vehicle functionalities require the vehicle's path to be detected and assessed which is done by cameras that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings (e.g., obstacles).
- The images are transmitted to the respective control module for further analytics required to operate the systems.
- Some images are just processed on a volatile basis (RAM), others may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment.
- The vehicle may be equipped with an outward-facing camera (OFC) that can be used to take footage of the surrounding (for example, dashcam).
- The vehicle may also be equipped with an inward-facing camera (IFC), which can be used to take footage inside the vehicle.
- Both OFC and IFC footage is stored.
- You are responsible to check the laws of your residence before turning on your OFC or IFC (for instance, in some countries consent is required for the use of IFC, and in others OFC is strictly restricted to dashcam purposes).
- For more camera details, see section "Panoramic View System" in this manual.

Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode

- In case of a permanent vehicle transfer, that is, when you are purchasing a second-hand vehicle or receiving a vehicle transferred from a third party for permanent use, it must be noted that any personalization/user settings made via the infotainment system (including the address list and the navigation system) can be accessed by the new owner.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is to be scrapped or transferred, factory reset the vehicle system to protect your privacy.

- You can also restrict your vehicle's communication with the BYD data server and the processing of vehicle-related and personal data by setting the vehicle to offline mode.
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap to turn wireless network off.
  - This can also be done by tapping → → **Network and Internet** → **Wi-Fi**.

Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities

- BYD discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it.

- However, subject to applicable laws, government agencies may be authorized to read out data from vehicles (e.g. data can be read from the airbag control unit to clarify an accident).
- If required by law, BYD may also be obliged to disclose data upon request to governmental authorities in your country, e.g. in the investigation of a criminal offence.

Your Data Protection Rights

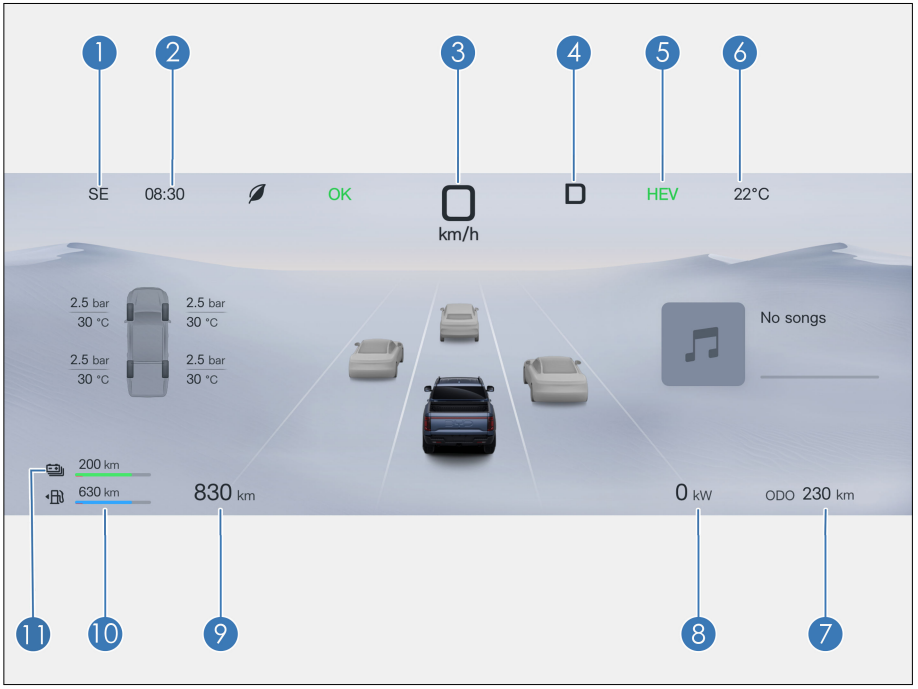
- BYD has staunch respect for its customer's privacy, and strictly complies with all data protection laws, in particular the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) and applicable local laws.
- According to these laws, owners have specific rights when their personal data is processed:
  - Data subjects have the right of information and access, to rectification, erasure of personal data ("right to be forgotten") and the right to object to the processing of personal data or to restrict it (or to withdraw consent given earlier, as well as the right to data portability).
- These rights may be limited in some cases. For example, if we can show that we have a legal obligation to process your data, or if providing the information to you would disclose personal data about another person, or if we are legally prevented from disclosing that information.
- In some cases, this may mean that we can retain the data even if you withdraw your consent.
- For more information on data processing, data protection, and any rights you may have, please visit the latest version of the Privacy Policy available at the infotainment system.

02 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Instrument Cluster.....36

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster View



1 Direction

2 Time

3 Speedometer

4 Gear status

5 EV/HEV mode

6 Vehicle surrounding temperature

7 Total mileage odometer

8 Power meter

9 Total remaining driving range

10 Fuel gauge

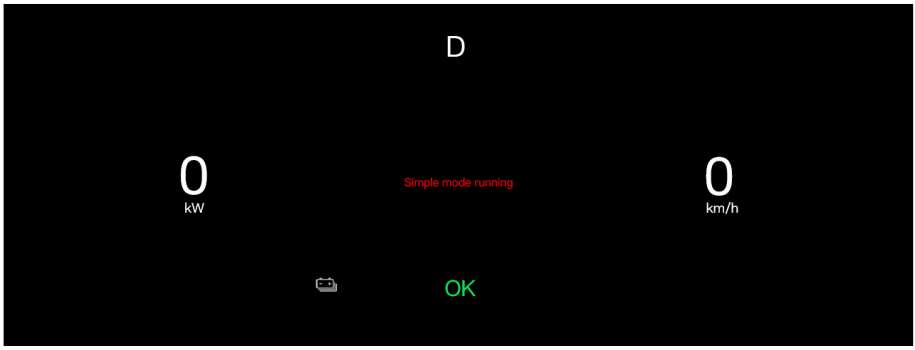
11 State of charge (SOC)

Instrument cluster Settings

- The user can enter the instrument settings by accessing infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Audio&Display**→**Instrument** to adjust the instrument brightness, mileage information, and battery gauge display, and other settings.
- Mileage information can be switched between total mileage, mileage one, mileage two, HEV mileage, and EV mileage.

- The SOC can be set to be displayed as mileage or battery level.

Simplified mode*



REMINDER

- During occasional communication delays in the instrument cluster system, the instrument cluster may automatically switch to simple mode for safe driving. In this mode, the instrument cluster continues to display driving-related information normally without affecting normal vehicle travel. After the system becomes normal, the instrument cluster may automatically exit the simple mode. If it does not, try the following actions to switch back to normal mode:
  - Press and hold the scroll button on auxiliary dashboard for three seconds to restart the instrument cluster information display system.
  - While vehicle safety is ensured, operate the vehicle power switch to turn off the vehicle and then turn the ignition on.
- If the instrument cluster remains in simple mode after those actions have been taken, promptly contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.
- The image of the instrument cluster view is for reference only and is subject to actual factory configuration.

REMINDER

Instrument Cluster Indicators

Indicators and Warning Lights

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	Turn signal indicator		Position light indicator

	Discharge indicator		OK indicator
	GPF regeneration indicator		Low beam indicator
	EV Indicator		HEV Indicator
	AVH indicator		HDC indicator
	Front fog light indicator		High beam indicator
	Forced EV indicator		Towing mode indicator
	ICC active indicator		BSD activation indicator
	LDA system indicator		AEB indicator
	ACC working indicator		ELKA active indicator
	AFL active indicator		AFL standby indicator
	ACC standby indicator		ICC standby indicator
	Wade mode indicator		AVH standby indicator
	Sport mode indicator		Comfort mode indicator

	Economic mode indicator		Snow mode indicator
	Muddy mode indicator		Mountain mode indicator
	Sand mode indicator		Driving power limit warning light
	GPF regeneration fault indicator		Rear fog light indicator
	Low tire pressure warning light		Oil life monitoring indicator
	Smart key warning light		Main alarm indicator
	ESC OFF warning light		ESC fault warning light
	Headlight fault warning light		Engine fault warning light
	ABS fault warning light		High-voltage battery low SOC warning light
	Low fuel warning light		BSD fault indicator
	LDA fault warning light		LDA off indicator
	AEB fault warning light		ICC fault warning light

	ELKA fault indicator		ELKA off indicator
	ACC fault indicator		AFL fault indicator
	Wading mode fault warning light		AEB warning light
	EPB indicator		Parking system fault warning light
	Seat belt indicator		Airbag fault warning light
	Steering system fault warning light		Coolant overheating warning light
	Low oil pressure warning light		High-voltage battery charging connection indicator
	Low-voltage power system fault warning light		High-voltage battery overheating warning light
	High-voltage battery fault warning light		Powertrain fault warning light
	Motor overheating warning light		

Warning Lights/Indicators Description

 Emission fault warning light

- With the vehicle powered ON, this indicator is on for self-check. If on at any other time, it indicates that a certain control system of the vehicle may be faulty. Continuous operation in this state may cause serious damage to the vehicle.
- If this warning light lights up when the vehicle is not in self-check, drive the vehicle to the roadside safely, power the vehicle off, and power it on again, start the engine and check this warning light. If this warning light is still on, it is recommended to drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon

as possible. Before the BYD authorized dealer or service provider finds out the fault, drive with caution and avoid driving at a high speed or fully pressing the accelerator pedal.

- If the warning light lights up frequently, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection, even if it goes out after the above steps are followed.

CAUTION

- Continuous driving after the emission fault warning light turns on may damage the emission control system and the engine.



Low fuel warning light

- If on, it indicates little fuel in the fuel tank and reminds the driver to refuel the vehicle as soon as possible.
- When the fuel tank shakes on a slope or curve, the low fuel warning light may be on earlier than usual.



Smart key warning light

- If the key is not in the vehicle when you press the START/STOP button, this warning light comes on for a few seconds, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected, please confirm if the key is in the vehicle" is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- If you press the START/STOP button while an electronic smart key matching the model is in the vehicle, this warning light does not light up. The vehicle can now be powered on.
- This warning light will disappear if the key is taken into the vehicle within a few seconds after the light turns on.
- If the warning light flashes after you press the START/STOP button, it indicates low battery of the key.



ABS fault warning light

- With the vehicle powered ON, this warning light is on for self-check. If the anti-lock braking system (ABS) is working properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system fails, the light lights up again until the fault is cleared.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking system fault warning light off), the braking system continues to operate whereas the ABS does not.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking system fault warning light off), since the ABS system does not operate, the wheels will be locked in case of emergency braking or braking on a slippery road.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light does not come on or is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the parking brake system fault warning light is on, it is recommended to immediately park the vehicle in a safe place

REMINDER

and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.

- The ABS has a self-check function. If any malfunction occurs, the ABS fault warning light turns on. This means the ABS fails. At this time, the brake still provides normal braking force like a conventional vehicle without anti-lock braking function, and the front or rear axle may lock up under large braking force, which will easily lead to steering failure or tail flick. Especially when this fault occurs in rainy and snowy weather, do not depress the brake pedal deeply to avoid losing control of the vehicle. At the same time, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to check the vehicle as soon as possible.
- If both the ABS and parking system warning lights go on after the electronic parking brake is fully released, it indicates that the braking force distribution system of the front and rear tires has also failed.
- If the brake pedal feels abnormal, take measures immediately. The braking system is dual-circuited, so partial failure cannot prevent the other two wheels from braking. In such a situation, you need to press the brake pedal further to slow the vehicle, and braking distance is longer. Decelerate the vehicle and safely move it to the roadside. A longer braking distance can present serious driving hazards, so the vehicle must be towed away for immediate repair.
- If you have to drive a short distance under such conditions, proceed at low speed with extreme caution.



Low tire pressure warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. It turns off in a few seconds if the tire pressure monitoring system is working properly. Thereafter, if the system fails, this warning light turns on again.
- When the low tire pressure warning light comes on or flashes, the message "Please check the TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster, and the tire pressure is displayed as "---", it indicates that the tire pressure system is faulty.
- When the tire pressure value displays "No Signal", it indicates that the tire pressure signal at this location of the vehicle may be disturbed or the tire pressure monitoring module is damaged.
- When the low tire pressure warning light is solid on and one or more values turn yellow on the tire pressure screen on the instrument cluster, the corresponding tire is in under-pressure condition. When the temperature value of one or more tires turns yellow, it indicates that the tire temperature is too high.

In the event of any of the situations above, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.



ESC fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. If electronic stability control (ESC) functions properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. If the

system fails, this warning light turns on again until the system fault is cleared.

- A flashing fault warning light during driving indicates that the ESC system is working.
- When the ESC fault warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC fails, but the ABS and the braking system continue to operate normally.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC system does not work. This means the vehicle is extremely unstable at sharp turns or when the driver steers away from obstacles ahead.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible:
  - When the ignition is switched on, this warning light remains off (self-check not performed within 5s) or is solid on after the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light stays on during driving.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ESC fault warning light remains on while the fault warning lights for the ABS and the parking system are on, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. In this case, if brakes are

REMINDER

applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.



ESC OFF warning light

- With the ignition on, this warning light turns on for a few seconds and then disappears.
- When the "ESC OFF" switch is turned on, the light should remain steady on and the ESC system will not operate. When the "ESC OFF" switch is pressed again, this warning light should turn off and the ESC system resumes its normal operation.

REMINDER

- Once the ESC OFF warning light is on, the driver must stay alert and drive at a low speed when making a sharp turn or avoiding obstacles which appear suddenly, because ESC system is turned off at this time and braking will cause instability.



Driving power limit warning light

- When the power of the vehicle is limited, this warning light will light up, and it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in time.



Seat belt indicator

- With the ignition on, if any seat belt is not fastened, the corresponding seat belt indicator will light up. It remains on until the seat belt is fastened.

 Airbag fault warning light

- With the ignition on, this warning light turns on and then off after a few seconds if the airbag system is working properly. This warning light is used to monitor the airbag ECU, collision sensors, inflation device, warning lights, connections, and power supply.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - When the ignition is switched on, this warning light remains off or is solid on after the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on or flashes during driving.

 Parking system fault warning light

If any of the following conditions occurs, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

This warning light lights up in the following conditions:

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on and the brake fluid level is low.

REMINDER

- When the brake fluid level is low, park the vehicle because it is dangerous to continue driving.

- When the engine is running, this indicator is solid on if the brake fluid level and EPB system operation are normal (the EPB is engaged and released normally, and the message "Please check the EPB" is not displayed).
- The parking system fault warning light stays on with the ABS fault warning light. In this case, the braking system or the EPB may not work normally, lengthening the braking distance. Therefore, during braking, the ABS does not function, and the vehicle is unstable. Proceed with caution.
- Momentary illumination of this warning light during operation does not indicate a problem.

CAUTION

If any of the following conditions occurs, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- When the engine is running and the light is still on, the brake may malfunction, resulting in extended stopping distances. Firmly depress the brake pedal to initiate an emergency stop.

 Steering system fault warning light

- When the steering system is faulty and this warning light is steady on, it is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

REMINDER

- The steering system features an electric motor to reduce the force required to turn the steering wheel.
- When turning the steering wheel, a hum may be heard from the

REMINDER

running motor. This does not indicate that the motor is faulty.

- Do not turn the steering wheel to its limit position for more than five seconds, otherwise the temperature protection will be activated and the steering system will be damaged or steering will become heavy.

- If you have turned the steering wheel frequently with the vehicle staying put for a long time, the steering wheel may become difficult to turn even if the warning light does not turn on. This is not a fault.

  - To prevent steering system overheating, the power assist effect will be reduced if the steering wheel has been frequently turned with the vehicle staying put for a long time. As a result, the steering wheel become difficult to turn. In this case, reduce steering frequency, or power off the vehicle and turn off the engine. The system will recover within 10 minutes.

WARNING

- If the steering system fault warning light goes on, immediately park the vehicle safely, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.



Coolant overheating warning light

- With the ignition on, this light indicates that the coolant temperature is high. It is recommended to park the vehicle to cool it down. In harsh conditions, like hot season and long periods of hill climbing and high speed driving, the engine may overheat.



Low oil pressure warning light

- This light is about warning of low oil pressure. If this warning light flashes or remains on during driving, drive off the road, park the vehicle in a safe place, and shut down the engine immediately. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for help.
- When the engine is idling, this warning light may flash occasionally, or go on momentarily after emergency braking. When the engine is accelerating gradually, if this indicator goes out, the oil pressure is normal.
- This warning light goes on in case of very low oil level.

CAUTION

- Do not drive the vehicle when the warning light is on, even for a short distance. Otherwise, the engine is damaged.



Low-voltage power system fault warning light

- If this warning light turns on while driving, it indicates that there is a problem with the charging system, DC system, or low-voltage power supply system. The engine can continue igniting until the battery runs out. In this case, turn off the A/C, fan, and the infotainment touchscreen, and drive the vehicle to the nearest BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance as soon as possible.



Powertrain fault warning light

- If the powertrain fails, this warning light turns on.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

CAUTION

- Try not to drive the vehicle when the warning light is on. It is recommended to drive to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to check the problem as soon as possible.

 High-voltage battery overheating warning light

- If this warning light is on, it indicates that the high-voltage battery temperature is too high and the vehicle must be stopped to cool down. When the warning light flashes, it is recommended to immediately stop the vehicle safely and leave the vehicle as soon as possible.
- The high-voltage battery may overheat under the following operating conditions:
  - Driving up a slope for a long time in hot weather
  - Long period of stop-and-go traffic condition, frequent rapid acceleration, frequent hard braking, or vehicle running for a long time without pause.

 High-voltage battery fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on. If the high-voltage battery system is working properly, this warning light will turn off in a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system fails, this light will light up again. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means that there are faults in the components monitored by the warning light system. In such case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light is steady on or occasionally turns on while driving.

 TSR indicator

- When this indicator lights up, it means that the vehicle system has recognized the speed limit value on current road section.

 Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) regeneration indicator

- When the GPF carbon load (particulate matter emission) reaches a certain amount, the GPF will actively regenerate and the GPF indicator is solid green. At this time, try to drive on the highway as much as road conditions allow, and when the particulate matter is cleared, the GPF indicator turns off automatically.

Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) regeneration fault indicator

- When the GPF carbon load (particulate matter emission) reaches its maximum, fuel consumption increases, power performance decreases, and the GPF indicator is solid yellow. At this time, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

REMINDER

- If the vehicle is driven in EV mode for a long time, this function starts

REMINDER

the engine for maintenance and a prompt is displayed on the instrument cluster: The engine has been started for maintenance.

Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts

The instrument cluster may display the following fault prompts. Handle them as recommended.

Symbol	Fault Prompt	Response
	Please check the OBC system	The on-board charging system is faulty. In this case, check the charging connection, and reconnect the charging equipment. If the fault persists, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the data network of the vehicle.	The vehicle may be disconnected from the data network. In this case, park the vehicle safely, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Engine attachment limited	The engine accessories function is faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the memory system	The memory system is faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the hill descent control (HDC) system	The HDC system is faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	EV power limited	The EV function is limited. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.
	Please check the headlight	The headlight is faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

	AEB warning light*	The AEB system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the BSD system	The blind spot detection system for lane change is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle immediately, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	BSD function limited	The BSD function is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the gear	The shifter controller is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle immediately, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the multi-purpose camera	The multi-purpose camera is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	MPC function limited	The function of the multi-purpose camera is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	The environment limited, the intelligent camera is not available	The intelligent-camera is unavailable. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Solenoid valve is cleaning. Please wait for a moment.	The solenoid valve is cleaning, please park and wait. If the malfunction exists for a long time, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the lane departure assist (LDA) system	The LDA is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle as soon as possible, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

03 CONTROLLER OPERATION

Doors and Keys.....50
Seats.....62
Steering Wheel.....66
Wipers..... 69
Rearview Mirrors.....71
Switches.....72

Doors and Keys

Keys

The vehicle is equipped with keys, including mechanical key, electronic smart key, Bluetooth digital key* and NFC key.

Electronic Smart Key

Press the left or right front door microswitch, while carrying the smart key, to unlock or lock all doors, or press smart key buttons to lock or unlock doors, open the tailgate, or start the vehicle remotely.

① Indicator

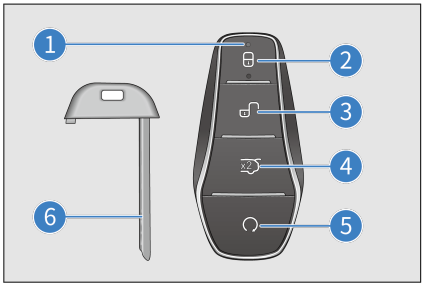
② Lock button

③ Unlock button

④ Locking/Unlocking the tailgate

⑤ START/STOP button

⑥ Mechanical key



WARNING

Button battery safety alert:

- The button (coin) battery in the smart key is hazardous and both new and used batteries are to be kept away from children at all times.
- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the button battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

CAUTION

- The smart key is an electronic component. Observe the following instructions to prevent damage to the key:
  - Do not expose the smart key to high temperatures, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not disassemble the smart key without authorization.
  - Do not let the smart key hit other objects or fall down.
  - Do not immerse the key in water or clean it in the ultrasonic scrubber.
  - Do not place smart keys with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as the mobile phone.
  - Do not attach to the smart key any objects (such as a metal seal) capable of cutting off electromagnetic wave signals.
  - You can register a spare key for the same vehicle. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

CAUTION

- If the electronic smart key cannot operate the door within the normal distance, or the key indicator light is dim or off:
  - Check for nearby radio stations or airport radio transmitters that interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
  - The smart key battery may be exhausted. Check the battery inside the electronic smart key. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for battery change.
- If you lose your smart key, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible to reduce the risk of vehicle theft or accidents.
- Do not change the transmission frequency arbitrarily, increase the transmission power (including additional transmission frequency amplifier), or arbitrarily connect the external detection antenna or switch to other transmitting detection antennas.
- Do not generate harmful interference to legal radio communication services when using the smart key. Once any interference is found, stop using the smart key immediately, and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use it.
- The use of micropower radio equipment must be free from interference of all radio services or from radiation of devices for industrial, scientific and medical applications.

CAUTION

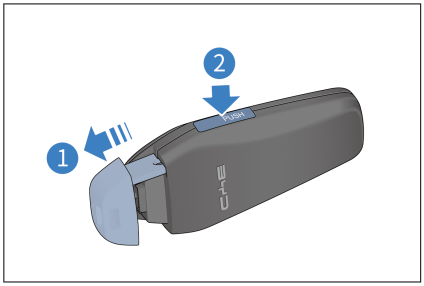
- Do not use it near aircraft or airports.
- People implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators should stay away from the detection antennas of intelligent entry and start systems, as electromagnetic waves can affect the normal use of such devices.
- In addition to people implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators, those who use other electronic medical devices should also consult the manufacturer on the use of such devices under the influence of electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may bring unknown consequences to the use of such medical devices.
- When leaving the vehicle, always carry your key and lock the vehicle. Never leave anyone (especially children) alone in the vehicle.

Mechanical Key

Use the mechanical key (inside the smart key) to lock or unlock the driver's door. Insert the mechanical key back into the smart key when it is not in use.

Taking out the mechanical key

- Press the "PUSH" button ② on the smart key, and take out the mechanical key in the direction indicated by ①.
- Press the "PUSH" button and insert the mechanical key back into the smart key when it is not in use.



NFC Digital Key*

- The NFC digital key is a digital key solution provided by BYD. You can register smartphones or wearable devices as vehicle keys to unlock, lock, and start the vehicle.
- Before activating the NFC digital key, ensure that:
  - You have registered BYD Cloud Service for the vehicle.
  - Your vehicle supports NFC digital key.
  - Your smartphone or wearable device supports BYD NFC digital key (consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for supported devices).

Activating the NFC digital key on smartphones

When activating the NFC digital key on smartphones, ensure the vehicle is in a safe gear. Follow the instructions bellow to activate:

- Via the BYD app:
  - Download BYD App from the App Store, then register and log in. Navigate to **Digital Key** and follow the instructions to activate the key.

Activating the NFC digital key on wearable devices

Supported wearable devices include Apple Watch (consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for other supported devices), and there are two ways of activation:

- Synchronize the key from iPhone to Apple Watch:
  - After successful key activation on iPhone, the device prompts to add the NFC digital key to a paired Apple Watch which is nearby and unlocked. Follow the prompts to complete activation.
- Via the Watch app:
  - If the iPhone NFC key is active but not synced to Apple Watch, open the Watch app on iPhone, select **Wallet**, find the key, and tap **Add** to activate the key following the instructions.

Using the NFC digital key

Ensure the NFC function is enabled on your device before using the NFC digital key. Here is how to use:

- Carry a mobile phone or wearable device with a valid NFC digital key, put its NFC antenna area close to NFC sensor area on the driver's side mirror, and unlock or lock the vehicle. Consult the manufacturers for details of the NFC antenna area.

CAUTION

- After authorizing vehicle start with the NFC digital key, start the vehicle promptly, If the vehicle is not started in time, place the mobile phone or wearable device close to NFC sensor area on the driver's side mirror again to obtain the permission.

Removing the NFC digital key

You can remove the NFC digital key in any of the two ways:

- Via the BYD app:

- Open the BYD app and navigate to the digital key management screen, select the key to remove, and enter the password to remove it.

- Via the Wallet app:
  - Open the Wallet app on the phone, select the digital key, and remove it following the instructions.

NFC Key Card

- The NFC key card, based on the near field communication method, can be used to unlock/lock the vehicle and authorize vehicle start.
- Hold your NFC card close to the NFC sign on the driver's side mirror to unlock/lock the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- NFC key card is an electronic product. The following instructions must be observed to prevent function failure of or damage to the card:
  - Do not place the NFC card in the wireless phone charging area in the vehicle (see ***P219***).
  - Do not attach any object (such as a metal seal or metal phone case) that can block electromagnetic waves, when using the NFC card.
  - Do not place the NFC card in a position exposed to high temperature, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not bend the card with force.
  - Do not place the card with other hard objects.
- NFC key cards use near-field communication technology, requiring a detection distance of less than 2 cm. Hold your NFC card close to the side mirror for 1-2 seconds.
- It is recommended to carry the NFC card at all times to avoid situations where you may be unable to use the vehicle due to loss or malfunction of your phone or smart key.
- In order to ensure vehicle safety, handle the NFC key card with care. If it is lost, immediately contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for blocking of the lost card and configuration of a new card.

Bluetooth Digital Key*

- Use the Bluetooth digital key to control the vehicle through a close-range Bluetooth connection, including locking or unlocking the doors.
- Download and install the latest BYD App in the app market. The function of Bluetooth digital key can be found in the app.
- For vehicles supporting Bluetooth digital key, you can use the key after activating it in the BYD App.
- Turn on the Bluetooth on your phone, approach the vehicle, and open the BYD App for automatic Bluetooth digital key connection. You can also connect it manually. The key is effective after Bluetooth is connected.
- The specific functions supported by the key are subject to the vehicle configuration. The key can be used without network. After the key connection, you can select operations, and the app will immediately send commands to control the vehicle.

- In some countries or regions, according to relevant regulations, when a user starts the vehicle, the vehicle will detect the position of the Bluetooth digital key. The vehicle can be started only when it detects that the key is within a certain range of it to ensure the vehicle property safety.

CAUTION

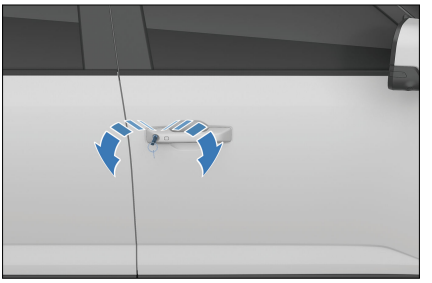
- Before activating the Bluetooth digital key, ensure that the vehicle network is well connected. If the activation fails, try to move the vehicle to a place with good network and activate the key again in the application.
- After the vehicle is unlocked with a Bluetooth digital key, the doors will lock automatically if there is no operation in a short time.
- When the key connection or operation fails for many times, you can turn the Bluetooth off and then on, or restart the application.
- Limited by the vehicle environment and mobile phone performance, the effective distance of the key will be reduced in case of dense vehicles.
- There are a few mobile phones that are not compatible with Bluetooth digital keys.

Locking/Unlocking Doors

Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key

Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole of the driver's door handle, turn and remove the key, and pull the door handle to open the door.

- Unlock the driver's door: Turn the key clockwise.
- Lock the driver's door: Turn the key counterclockwise.



CAUTION

- After removing the mechanical key, pull the driver's door handle to open the door.

Opening Doors with Interior Door Handle

- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the handle once to open the door from inside the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked, pull the handle twice to open the door from inside the vehicle.



CAUTION

- As this vehicle is equipped with a child protection lock, the rear doors can only be opened with the interior handle when the child protection lock is disabled.

Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key

- The wireless remote control is used to unlock or lock all doors at a close distance, and complete additional functions.
- In the active area, press the associated button on the registered smart key to lock or unlock all doors.

Locking:

- When all doors and hood are closed, press the lock button to lock all doors simultaneously. If the vehicle is shut down, the side mirrors fold in (when side mirror auto fold is enabled on the infotainment system) with turn signals flashing once. If the ignition has not been switched off, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once. Check whether all doors are securely locked.



- If a door, the hood or the tailgate is not closed, the turn signals will not flash, and the horn will sound once.

Unlocking:

- Press the unlock button to unlock all the doors at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.
- When you unlock all the doors with the smart key, even if no door is opened, the interior lights stay on for 15 seconds and then go out (providing that the Auto Interior Lights function is enabled on the drop-down shortcut menu of the infotainment touchscreen).
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open any door within 30 seconds after unlocking with the smart key. Otherwise, all the doors will lock automatically.
- If the key is in the vehicle when the doors are closed and locked, the vehicle will unlock automatically and the turn signals will flash twice.

Finding the Vehicle with Smart Key

- With the anti-theft alarm system armed, pressing the lock button sounds a beep and makes turn signals flash 15 times. Use this function to locate the vehicle when it cannot be found.
- When the vehicle is in car search mode, press the lock button again. The vehicle enters the next car search mode.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key

- When the ignition is switched off:
  - Press and hold the lock button on the smart key to raise the four windows.
  - Press and hold the unlock button on the smart key to lower the four windows.

WARNING

- When using the remote control function to raise windows, pay attention to the safety of occupants in the vehicle, and use this function only after making sure the windows are clear from pinching anyone.

REMINDER

- To enable or disable key window locking and closing/unlocking and opening functions, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Windows** (configurations of the actual vehicle prevail).

Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch

Locking

- With the doors closed but not locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key. All the doors are locked. If the vehicle is shut down, the side mirrors fold in (when side mirror auto fold is enabled on the infotainment system) with turn signals flashing once. If the ignition has not been switched off, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once.



- If a door, the hood or the tailgate is not closed, pressing the microswitch will still lock the closed doors, but the horn will only sound once, and the turn signals will not flash.

Unlocking

- When doors are locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key. All doors unlock and turn signals flash twice.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking, or all doors will relock automatically.
- Pressing the microswitch does not work if:
  - This is performed while a door is being opened or closed.
  - The smart key is left in the vehicle.

REMINDER

- If the smart key is too close to an exterior door handle or window, it may not be possible to activate the entry function.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch

- When the ignition is switched off, press and hold the microswitch while carrying the smart key to roll up or down all windows. (To enable or disable this function, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Windows**.

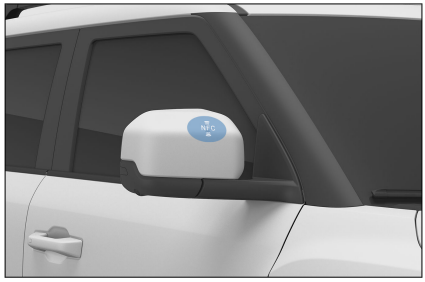
Locking/Unlocking with NFC Key

Locking doors:

When doors are closed but unlocked, hold the effective NFC key close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror. All doors can then be locked at the same time. The turn signals flash once when the vehicle is powered off.

Unlocking doors:

When doors are locked, hold the NFC key close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror. Then all doors can be unlocked at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.



- Putting the effective NFC key close to designated area on the driver's side mirror does not work if:
  - The NFC key is placed close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror while a door is being opened or closed.
- To use the NFC digital key on the phone, enable the NFC function of the phone and hold the top back part of the phone close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror.

CAUTION

- The NFC digital key may not work on some phones when they are turned off.
- Avoid using the NFC digital key of your phone for extended periods or frequently when it is out of battery or turned off.

REMINDER

- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking with the NFC key, or all doors will relock automatically.
- After unlocking by NFC key, the user can start the vehicle in a certain period, while this will be disabled after locking with valid key.

REMINDER

- For NFC key (smart phone)* setup instructions, see "NFC Digital Key" in this chapter.

Locking/Unlocking the Tailgate*

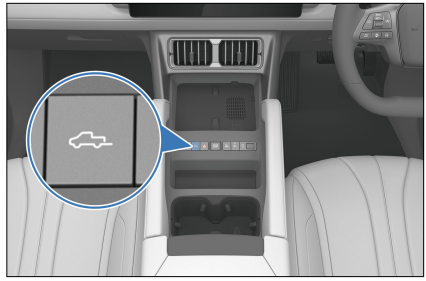
Opening the tailgate with smart key

- Double press the tailgate opening button on the smart key to open the tailgate, and the turn signals flash twice.



Opening the tailgate from inside the vehicle

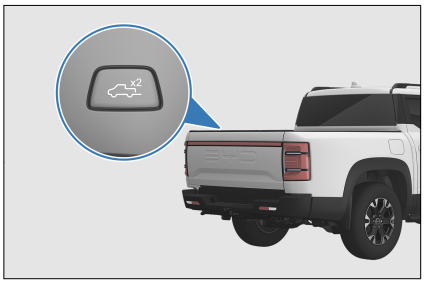
- When the tailgate is closed, press the switch once, follow the prompts on the infotainment touchscreen to unlock and open the tailgate.



Opening the tailgate with exterior pickup bed switch

- With the vehicle unlocked, press the exterior microswitch on the tailgate twice within one second to open it.

- With the vehicle locked, unlock the vehicle with the smart key and press the exterior microswitch twice to open the tailgate.



Opening the tailgate on the infotainment touchscreen

- With the vehicle unlocked, slide down the top status bar on the infotainment screen to display the shortcut page, and tap to open the tailgate.

Closing the tailgate manually

- When the tailgate is open and still, push it upward, and it will be closed after fully locking.



WARNING

- In order to prevent serious injury and even death, make sure to observe the following precautions when operating the tailgate:
  - Make sure the people nearby are safe and alert them of the tailgate's motion.

WARNING

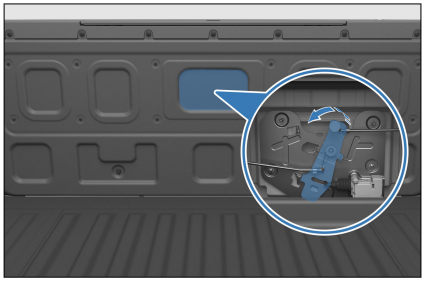
- Make sure hands and fingers are clear from the tailgate when it is closing.
- Make sure the surrounding area is safe when opening or closing the tailgate.
- Do not allow children to open or close the tailgate, otherwise their fingers and other body parts may be caught, resulting in personal injuries.
- Make sure the tailgate is properly closed when the vehicle is in motion.
- Be mindful of windy conditions when opening or closing the tailgate, as it may move suddenly in strong wind.
- Before loading or unloading the pickup bed, make sure the tailgate is fully open and secure.

REMINDER

- The above locking/unlocking methods apply to BYD original tailgate only. Refer to the actual vehicle for specifics.

Emergency Tailgate Unlocking from the Inside

An emergency unlock device is arranged under the cover plate of the tailgate. Disassemble the plate and pull the lever inside, the tailgate can be opened manually.



REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered off, the tailgate can be unlocked from the inside in case of emergency.

Locking/Unlocking with Central Locking

Locking or unlocking the vehicle with the central locking

See ***P75*** in "Driver's Door Switches" in this chapter.

Locking or unlocking doors automatically

- All doors automatically lock at vehicle speeds above 8 km/h.
- Press the START/STOP button to switch the ignition off. All doors unlock automatically.

Locking/unlocking all doors concurrently

- With the anti-theft alarm system disarmed, the backlight of the central lock button turns on if the vehicle is locked and off if the vehicle is unlocked.
- Pressing the central lock button locks all doors so that any attempt to open any door from the outside fails. At this time, pull the interior handle to unlock a door and pull a second time to open it.

REMINDER

- All doors unlock automatically when the vehicle suffers a strong impact, depending on the impact intensity and accident type.

Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key

When the central locking system or the smart key fails, use the mechanical key for emergency locking or unlocking.

Locking

1. Open all doors other than the driver's door, insert the mechanical key into the door's keyhole and turn the key clockwise about 60°. You can then lock the doors by closing them.



2. After locking other three doors, open the driver's door.
3. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it clockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out. (See "Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key" in this Chapter.)
4. Close the driver's door.
5. Check whether all doors are securely locked.

Unlocking

1. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it counterclockwise as

far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out.

2. Pull the door handle again to open the driver's door.
3. Pull the interior handle twice to unlock the three other doors.

Smart Access and Start System

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors and start the vehicle.

Access

Use the valid smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors. (see ***P55*** and ***P56*** in this chapter).

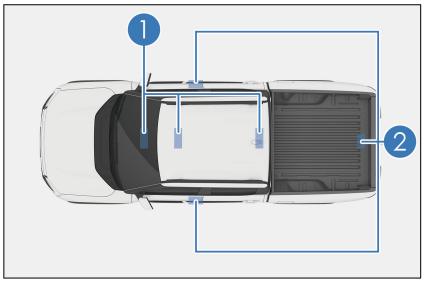
Start-up

With the smart key inside, press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle. (see ***P119*** in this chapter.)

Antenna positions

① Interior antenna

② Exterior antenna

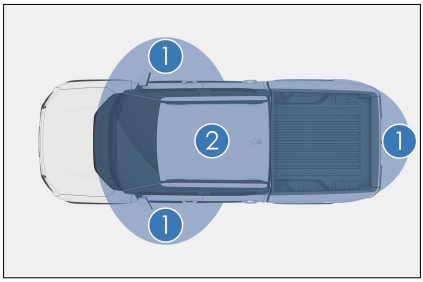


Active area

The smart access and start functions take effect only when the registered smart key is within the active area.

① Active area of the access function: about 1m±20cm from the front door handle and the exterior pickup bed switch.

② Active area of the start function: inside the cabin.



If another smart key is near this vehicle's smart key, unlocking may take longer than usual, which is normal.

REMINDER

In the following situation, smart access and start system may not work normally:

- There is a strong electromagnetic field nearby, such as TV towers, power stations, and broadcasting stations.
- The smart key is being carried along with a communication device, such as a two-way radio or mobile phone.
- The smart key is in contact with or covered by a metal object.
- The door handle is operated too quickly.
- The smart key is too close to the handle.
- Another wireless remote control function is being used nearby.

REMINDER

- When the smart key battery runs out.
- The smart key is close to high-voltage equipment or equipment that produces noise.
- The smart key is being carried along with another smart key or radio-wave-emitting device.
- Even within the active area, the smart key may not work properly in certain locations, for example, on the dashboard, in the glove box, or on the floor.

- If the smart access system is not working properly and it is impossible to enter the vehicle, the mechanical key can be used to lock/unlock the driver's door, or the wireless remote control function can be used to lock/unlock all doors.
- Pressing the START/STOP button may not enable the start function due to:
  - Smart key failure. If the smart key warning light lights up and the message "Low key battery" is displayed on the instrument cluster, the battery of the key may be exhausted.
  - The vehicle is started repeatedly in a short time. Please wait for 10 seconds and start the vehicle again.
- If the smart access and start system cannot work properly due to system failures, bring all smart keys to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.

Saving battery power

- The key fob communicates with the vehicle even when the vehicle is not running. Therefore, do not leave the smart key in the vehicle or within two meters from the vehicle.
- Receiving strong electromagnetic waves for a long time drains the battery of the smart key quickly. The smart key must be kept at least one meter away from electrical equipment that generates a magnetic field, such as the following devices:
  - TVs
  - PCs
  - Phone charger
  - Electroliers
  - Fluorescent desk lamps

Child Protection Lock

Child protection locks on both sides of rear doors are designed to prevent children sitting in the rear seats from opening the rear doors.

① Unlock button

② Lock button

While the latch is locked, the door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle but only by using the exterior handle.



CAUTION

- Before driving, especially when children are onboard, ensure that

CAUTION

the doors are closed and child protection locks are activated.

- Proper use of seat belts and activation of child protection locks help prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out of the vehicle in an accident, and also hinder unintended door opening.

Seats

Seat Precautions

- Adjust the driver's seat so that the pedals, steering wheel, and dashboard controls are within the driver's easy control.
- While driving, the most effective safeguard is to keep the seatback upright, always rest well on the seatback, and adjust the seat belt to the right position.
- Rear seats cannot be folded in with the vehicle running.
- Secure your luggage appropriately to prevent it from skidding or moving. Luggage in the vehicle should not be higher than seatbacks.
- The head support can only protect your head when it is in the proper position. Remember to adjust it to the proper position if it has been moved.

WARNING

- Sitting on a folded seatback or on cargo is prohibited. Improper seating position or improperly fastened seat belts can result in personal injuries in case of emergency braking or a collision.
- Do not place any items under the seats. The driver may lose control of the vehicle because items placed there affect the seat locking mechanism, causing the seat to move suddenly.
- When adjusting a seat, ensure sufficient space around the seat and in the rear seating area for children, passengers, or pets there. Be careful not to squeeze or hit children, occupants, or pets in the rear seat area.
- When adjusting a seat, ensure sufficient space between your feet and those of surrounding passengers to avoid injury.
- When adjusting the seat, do not place your hand under the seat or near its operating parts, to prevent being crushed.
- After adjusting the seatback, lean back to confirm the seatback has been locked. Seatbacks that are not fully locked can cause personal injuries in an accident or during emergency braking.
- Do not put the seatback down while driving or riding in the vehicle. This makes the shoulder strap of the seat belt not properly attached to the body. As a result, occupants could hit the strap in an accident, causing serious injuries to the neck or other parts; or they may slip out of the waist belt, resulting in other serious injuries.
- Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is in motion, as unpredictable seat movement can

WARNING

cause the loss of vehicle control at this time.

- Do not drive the vehicle until occupants are seated properly.
- Do not allow children to adjust the seat without adult supervision to avoid any injury.

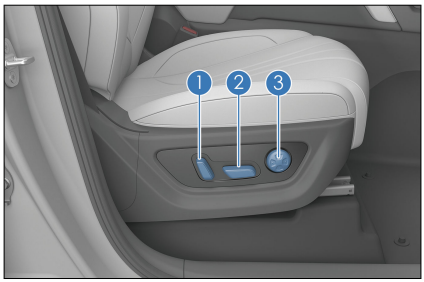
CAUTION

- When folding seats, make sure no seat belt is damaged.
- Adjust the seat position before fastening seat belts.

Adjusting Front Seats

Adjusting Front Seat with Power

Front seat adjustment includes seatback angle adjustment, seat position adjustment*, and lumbar support adjustment*. Choose the following methods according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.



1. Seatback angle adjustment switch
   - Tilt the switch backward or forward to recline seatback.
2. Seat position adjustment

   Seat position adjustment includes forward/backward adjustment, cushion angle adjustment*, and height adjustment*.
   - Toggle the seat position adjustment switch back or forth to move the seat backward or forward.
   - Move the front end of the switch up or down to change the cushion angle*.
   - Move the rear end of the switch up or down to raise or lower the seat*.
3. Lumbar support adjustment*

   The seatback profile can be adjusted to fit the curvature of the occupant's lumbar spine. To allow you and your occupants to sit in the seats in a correct and relaxed manner, the seat should support the occupants' lumbar spine.
   - Press the front or rear portion of the switch to increase or decrease the curvature.
   - Press the upper or lower portion of the switch to extend the curvature up or down.

CAUTION

- Releasing the switch stops the seat in this position. Do not place anything under the seat as this may prevent the seat from operating.
- Do not move the front seats too far forward to avoid contact with the roof or sun visor.

Seat Ventilation/Heating*

- To enable or disable seat ventilation or heating*, go to infotainment touchscreen → .

- You can also access the settings in the drop-down menu on infotainment system homepage.

Ventilation adjustment*

- Seat ventilation: On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the seat ventilation controls to select a ventilation level: 1 or 2.
  - The initial state of the heating indicator is off.
  - Tap to select the operation mode among level 1, level 2, and OFF.
  - Tap OFF to stop ventilation.

Heating adjustment*

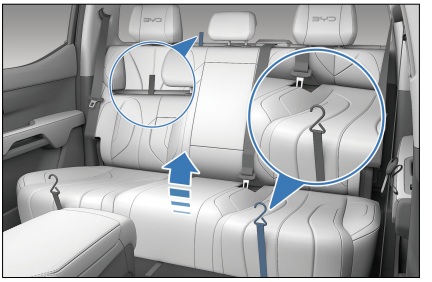
- Seat heating: On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the heated seat controls to select a heating level: 1 or 2.
  - The initial state of the heating indicator is off.
  - Tap to select the operation mode among level 1, level 2, and OFF.
  - Tap OFF to stop heating.

Ventilator and heater cannot be turned on at the same time.

- Tap the ventilation icon to make the fan work; if the heating function is then enabled, the fan will stop working and the heater will start to work.
- Tap the heating icon to make the heater work; if the ventilation function is then enabled, the heater will stop working and the fan will start to work.

Folding Rear Seats

- Fold the seatback flat
  - Pull the seatback release strap upward while the seatback is in the upright position.
  - Push the seatback forward/backward to fold it. Fold the seatback forward until it contacts the seat cushion.



- Lift the seat cushion upward
  - Pull the seat cushion release strap upward.
  - Lift up and turn over the cushion until it contacts the seatback. Attach the hooks on both side straps of the seat cushion to the inner head support post.

CAUTION

- Precautions
  - Do not put the seatback down with the vehicle running.
  - Do not fold the seats with the vehicle running.
  - Make sure the second-row seats are fully locked before driving.
  - After the rear seatback is put down, never place luggage on the back.
  - Unlock all seat belt buckles and latches before lifting the seat cushion.
  - The area underneath the seat is reserved for maintenance access. Do not step on this area or place any objects in it when after the seat cushion is lifted.

Head Supports

Adjusting Head Supports

- Lifting a head support
  - Lift the head support to a proper position, and release it after hearing a locking sound.
- Lowering a head support
  - Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, and then release the button after hearing a locking sound.



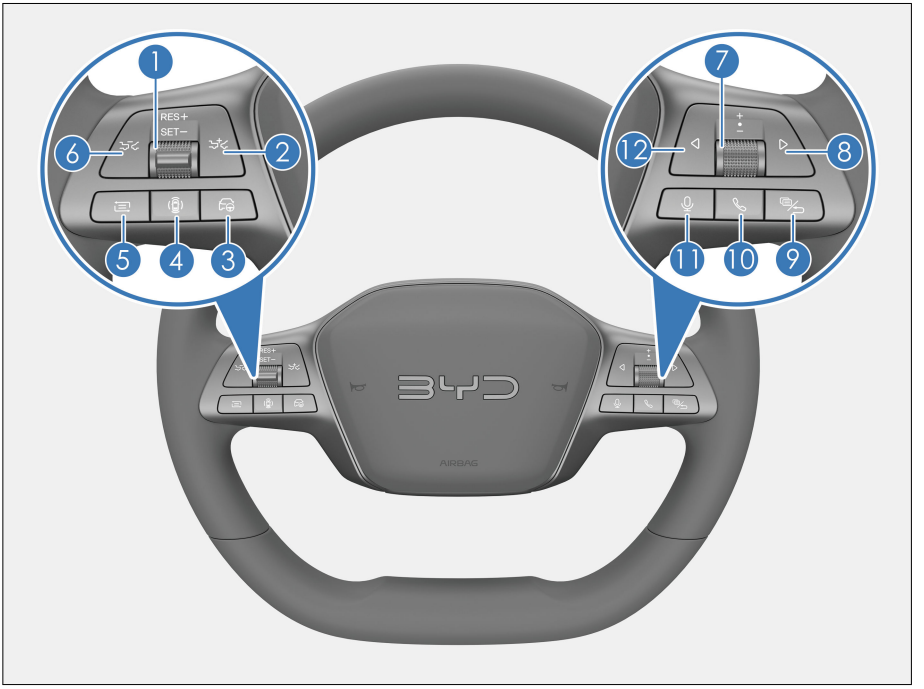
- Removing a head support
  - Press and hold the head support adjustment button, remove the head support and release the button.
- Installing a head support
  - Insert the head support levers into the bushing with the grooves facing forward. Press the head support adjustment button, push down the head support to a proper position, and then release the button.

REMINDER

- Head supports protect vehicle occupants from head and neck injuries. Adjust the head support so that its center aligns with the back of your head for maximum protection. Adjust the head support to the proper position based on your actual height.
- When adjusting head support height, align the occupant's ear tip line with the center line of the head support.
- After adjusting the head support, ensure that it is locked into position.
- Do not drive the vehicle without head supports.
- Do not attach any objects to the head support levers.

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Switches



1	+/Reset or -/Set	7	Scroll button
2	Distance +	8	Right
3	Cruise switch	9	Instrument cluster/Back
4	AVM	10	Call
5	Driving information	11	Speech recognition
6	Distance -	12	Left

The audio control switch is operational when the ignition is switched on.

Left-hand buttons

Rocker switch

- Reset+/: Activates the cruise control system and uses the previous system settings.
- Set - /: Sets to cruise at the current speed.

Distance -*

- Reduces the distance from the vehicle ahead by one level when the ACC function is enabled. A total of four levels are available.

Distance +*

- Increases the distance by one level when the ACC function is enabled. A total of four levels are available.

Cruise control switch*

- Press this button to turn the cruise control system on or off.

REMINDER

- For instructions on using cruise control, see "Driver Assistance".

Cruise control*

- Press this button to change the cruise control mode from active to standby.

Cruise control cancellation*

- Press this button to change the cruise control mode from active to standby.

AVM

- Press this button to enable or disable the around view monitor (AVM) system.

Custom*

- Press and hold: Call out the custom menu.
- Press: Perform custom functions.

Driving information

- Press this button to switch the driving information interface. Press and hold to clear the relevant driving information.

Right-hand buttons

Scroll button

- Adjusting infotainment system volume when the instrument cluster is not in menu mode:
  - Roll the button upward to increase the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the highest.
  - Roll the button downward to decrease the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the lowest.
  - Press down the button to mute.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode:
  - Roll the button upward to select the upper level-2 or level-3 menu items when the instrument cluster is in the menu mode.
  - Roll the button downward to select the lower level-2 or level-3 menu items when the instrument cluster is in the menu mode.
  - Press down the button to go to the next-level menu or confirm the current setting when the instrument cluster is in menu mode.

CAUTION

- The infotainment system is muted once the instrument cluster is set to the menu mode. To adjust infotainment system volume, exit the instrument cluster menu mode first.

Left/Right button

- When the infotainment system is in radio mode:
  - Press the ◁ button to select previous radio station.
  - Press the ▷ button to select next radio station.

- In USB/Bluetooth music/third-party music APP and other modes:
  - Press the ◁ button to play the previous track (track number -1).
  - Press the ◁ button to select a record upward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.
  - Press the ▷ button to play the next track (track number +1).
  - Press the ▷ button to select a record downward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.
- In the menu mode:
  - Press the ◁ button to switch to level-1 menu and its submenus on the left.
  - Press the ▷ button to switch to level-1 menu and its submenus on the right.

Call

- Press this button to make or receive a call (the audio system is muted at the same time).
- When a Bluetooth-unrelated screen is currently displayed, press this button to switch to the phone selection screen if Bluetooth is disconnected, or to the dial screen if Bluetooth is connected.
- After entering a phone number on the Dial screen or selecting a record on the Call Log or Contacts screen, press this button to dial the number.
- When Bluetooth is connected, but no phone number is entered on the Dial screen, press this button to switch to the call log screen. Press this button again to call the first dialed number on the call history.

Speech recognition

- Press this button to activate speech recognition on the infotainment touchscreen, with which you can record voice commands.
- Press a second time to exit speech recognition.

Instrument cluster/Back

- When the instrument cluster is not in the menu mode, press this button to view the instrument cluster menu.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode, press this button to return to the upper-level screen, or to exit the menu if there is no upper-level screen.
- When on the Bluetooth call screen, press this button to end the call.

Horn 

- Press the horn button area to honk the horn, and release to stop honking.

CAUTION

- Avoid pressing honking for too long, as the horn may be damaged.

REMINDER

- Observe the traffic laws and use the horn properly.

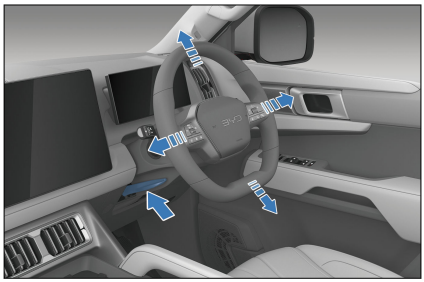
Adjusting the Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually*

To adjust the steering wheel position, hold it and operate as follows:

- Push down the steering wheel adjustment handle, adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle, and then

return the handle to the locking position.



REMINDER

- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving, as this is under risk of impaired vehicle control, which can lead to accidents.
- After adjusting the steering wheel, move it up and down to verify that it is securely locked.

Steering Assist Mode Settings

- The level of steering assistance can be adjusted to individual preferences.
- You can set Comfort or Sport pedal feel on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control**.

REMINDER

- Setting the steering mode to sport mode is suggested if the steering wheel feels light when the vehicle is running at a high speed. Steering assist mode settings can only be changed in ECO, NORMAL, and SPORT modes with LKS off, no obvious turning action and a vehicle speed lower than 80 km/h.

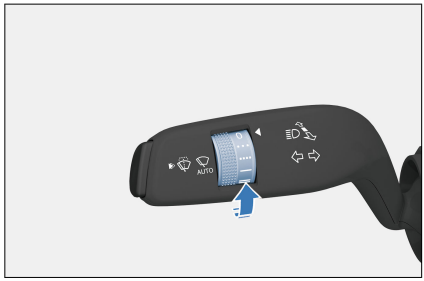
Wipers

Wiper Switch

Windshield Wipers and Washer

Front wipers

- The lever is used to control the windshield wipers and washer among the following five modes:
  - 0 : OFF
  - • • • : Auto*/Intermittent wipers level 1
  - • • • • : Auto*/Intermittent wipers level 2
  - ▬ : Slow
  - ▬ : Fast
- To select a mode, slide the control button up or down.
- In slow and fast modes, the wipers operates continuously.



- You can enable **Auto Wiper** on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **Drive** → **Comfort Driving**. Once enabled, the wipers will swipe once and then switch to the auto wiper mode, adjusting the speed according to the amount of rainfall.
- In auto mode, adjusting the wiper button will change the auto wipers level.

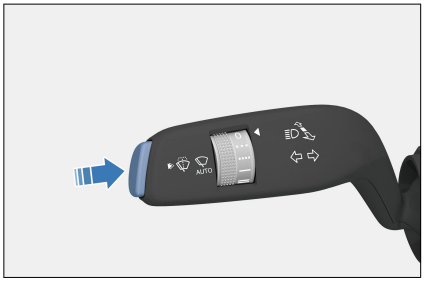
WARNING

- If the ignition is on, and the wipers are set to auto mode, touching or wiping the glass on the sensor area may activate the wipers and cause an accident.

CAUTION

- Turn off the auto wipers vehicle washes, in dry weather, or on rain-free days, to prevent inadvertent wiper operation.
- If snow or other debris causes the wipers to stop mid-operation, turn off the wipers and park the vehicle in a safe location. Then clear the snow or debris to allow the wipers to function correctly.
- The sensor may occasionally fail to properly detect snowflakes, as they have various shapes, which could lead to wiper malfunction. After the snow melts, the wipers may automatically activate.

- To operate the wipers in point-wiping mode, press the button at the end of the control lever to the first position. The wipers wipe at a low speed until the button is released.



Windshield washer

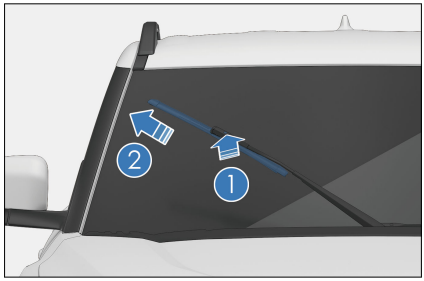
- To clean the windshield, press the button at the end of the control lever to the second position. The washer spray continuously, and the wipers will start working afterward.
- If the control lever is released, or if the operation lasts longer than 10 seconds, the washer stops spraying, and the wipers will complete 1 to 2 wiping cycles before stopping.

Replacing Wiper Blades

- Inspect front wiper blades for cracks or partial hardening at least every six months. If they are noted, replace wiper blades. Otherwise, the windshield will streak or will be left unclean after wiping.
- When the vehicle is powered on, enable or disable the front wiper check on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Drive** → **Overhaul**. When the corresponding wiper check function is enabled, the wipers rotate out automatically for easy maintenance and replacement.

Replacing front wiper

1. Pull up the wiper arm at the driver side, and then pull up the other at the passenger side.
2. Press the wiper lock button ①.
3. Hold the wiper blade and pull it out along the indicated direction ②;
4. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



WARNING

- Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the hood and wiper arms.
- Handle wiper blades with care. Do not push the wiper arm to let the wiper blade straightly strike onto the windshield.
- Do not bend the wiper blade, and do not obstruct the wiper blade when the wiper is in operation.

- For wiper blade maintenance, see ***P251***.

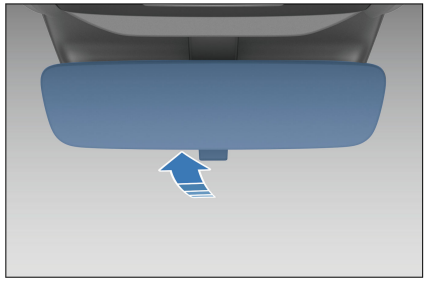
Rearview Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirror

Manual Anti-glare Interior Rearview Mirror

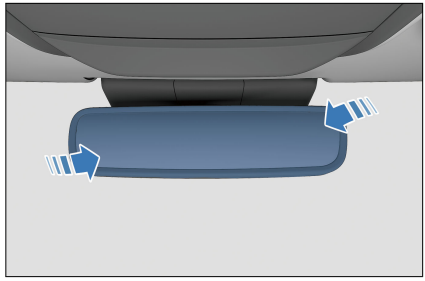
The manual anti-glare interior rearview mirror is designed with the normal mode and anti-glare mode:

- Normal mode —— rotate the control stick towards the rear of the mirror to get the clearest mirror image.
- Anti-glare mode—— pull the control stick towards the front of the mirror to effectively reduce interference from headlights of rear vehicles at night. Note that anti-glare may lower the clarity of rear visual field.



Automatic Anti-glare Rearview Mirror*

- The automatic anti-glare rearview mirror is equipped with electronic anti-glare function, which automatically adjusts the lens color of the mirror according to the surroundings to reduce the interference of rear glare on the driver's field of vision.
- Move the rearview mirror up, down, left, or right to a suitable position.



WARNING

- Do not hang heavy objects from the interior rearview mirror, or shake or drag it with force.
- To avoid the mirror falling off, do not adjust the mirror forcibly if it is stuck.
- Adjusting the interior rearview mirror before driving. Do not adjust the rearview mirror while

WARNING

driving. This may distract your attention and cause accidents.

Side Mirrors

Side Mirror Adjustment Buttons

Use the associated switches to adjust the side mirrors to see the sides of the vehicle.

- Selection switches: selects the side mirror to be adjusted.
  - Left side mirror button
  - Right side mirror button

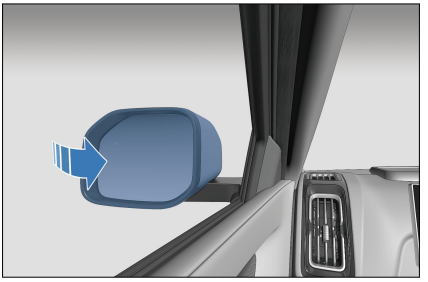


- Side mirror adjustment buttons : positions the selected mirror as needed.

Folding Side Mirrors

Folding side mirrors manually

- Push the outer edge of a side mirror to rotate it around the folding axis to the locked position.



Folding side mirrors with power

- Press the button to fold the side mirrors with power. Press the button again to unfold the mirrors.
- Both side mirrors fold automatically when the anti-theft alarm system is armed, and extend automatically when the system is disarmed.



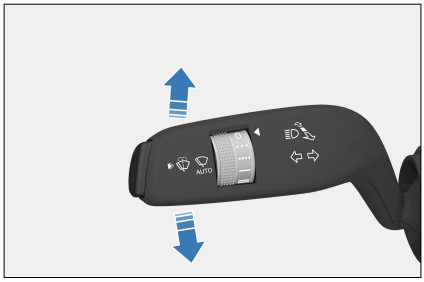
Switches

Light Switches

- Auto lights, position lights, low beam lights, rear fog lights, and daytime running lights can be controlled on the infotainment system.
- To turn on or off any of these lights or turn off all of them, go to the infotainment touchscreen → → **Light** → **Exterior**.

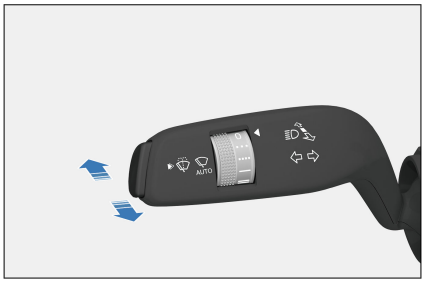
Turn signals

- Push up the switch lever to activate the right turn signal and down to activate the left turn signal.



High beam

- When the auto light or dipped beam function is activated in the infotainment system, push the lever to turn on or off the high beams.
  - Push the lever forward (away from the steering wheel) to turn on the high beams and then they are solid on.
  - Pull the lever back (close to the steering wheel) and the high beam flashes. Release the lever for the light switch to automatically reset and the high beams turn off.



REMINDER

- The light intensity sensor is located at the top of the windshield. Do not block the sensor or let anything splash on it.

Auto light off

- Activation conditions: to activate this function, set the switch to "Position Lamp" or "Dipped Beam" and switch off the vehicle power.
- When the auto light off function is activated, the headlights, position lights, rear fog lights, and high beams turn off in 10 seconds if the driver's door is closed.
- When the function is activated, the headlights and position lights turn off in 10 minutes if the driver's door is open.
- After the lights turn off automatically, if the light status changes, these lights come on in the new status. If the conditions to activate the auto light off function are still met, the function is activated again.
- Disabling the auto light off function: When the vehicle is powered on, the auto light off function is disabled, and the light switch can be operated normally.
- If the auto light off function has turned off the lights and the anti-theft alarm system has been armed, disarming the alarm system makes the lights come on again automatically if the auto light off function is activated. If the driver's door is opened while the power is OFF, the lights will turn off after 10 minutes. If the door is opened and then closed, the lights will turn off after 10 seconds.

Lighting delay

- Headlights after exit:
  - Set the time for "Headlights after Exit" on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Courtesy Light** (default: 10 seconds). With the lights set to "AUTO", "Position Lamp" or "Dipped Beam", when you power off the vehicle, lock

four doors and attempt to leave the vehicle, the corresponding lights will continue to light up for 10 seconds (or the set time) to provide coming-home lighting.

- Headlights before enter:
  - Set the time for "Headlights before Enter" on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Courtesy Light** (default: 10 seconds). With the light adjustment switch turned to "Auto", "Position Lamp" or "Dipped Beam", when you unlock the vehicle and attempt to approach it, the corresponding lights will light up for 10 seconds (or the set time) to provide the leaving-home lighting.

Adjusting headlight height

- Go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Exterior** → **Headlight Height**.

Driver's Door Switches

Power Window Switches

- The switch on each door can be used to control the window.
- The ignition has to be switched on.
- The window control switch at the driver's side contains four buttons to roll up or down windows on four doors, respectively.
  - Press a switch to roll the window down.
  - Pull a switch to roll the window up.
- While using the switch, release it to stop window halfway.



- Driver's side power window: Press all the way down and release the switch to open the window. Lift all the way up and release the switch to close the window. Press the switch again to halt the current action.

Anti-pinch function

- If someone or an object is caught by the window when it is rolling up, the window stops and rolls down automatically.

Initialization of anti-pinch function

- Pull the switch to close the window, then release immediately. Repeat the first step and hold the switch for at least 400 ms.

WARNING

Please follow the precautions below to prevent serious injury or death from window closing:

- Before operating the power windows, ensure that all passengers do not have any body parts that can be caught in the window.
- Do not allow a child to operate the power windows.

CAUTION

- Excessively frequent activation of the anti-pinch function can

CAUTION

activate the regulator motor's overheat protection.

- Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.
- Contacting a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance is recommended if the windows' automatic closing function or anti-pinch function is not working normally.
- In the low temperature, if the space between the glass and frame of window is frozen or covered by ice and snow, resulting in failure of the normal operation of windows, it is forbidden to repeat operating windows to avoid damage to the glass lifting module or other parts. After the hot air of air conditioner warms the vehicle and thaws the glass, the normal lifting can be operated.

Window Lock Button

- Press the window lock button. Only the switches on the driver's side can be used to open/close four windows; the window switch on the front passenger's side can be used to open/close its window; the window switches on the rear row are deactivated.
- Press the switch a second time. The indicator goes out, and all the window switches work normally.



Central Locking

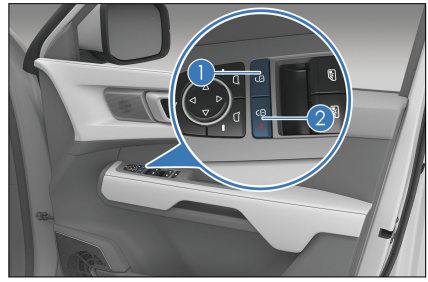
- The driver's door is equipped with power door lock switches. Both switches can lock or unlock all doors.

① Unlock

Press the central unlock button. All doors are unlocked and the red lock indicator turns off.

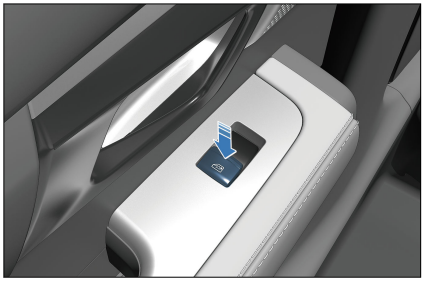
② Lock

Press the central lock button. All doors are locked and the red lock indicator lights up.



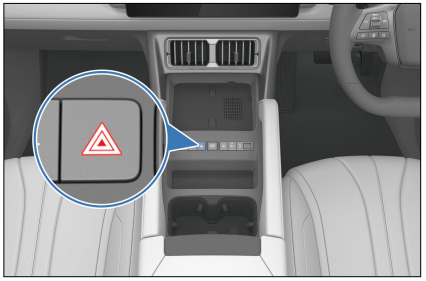
Passenger Side Window Switches

- When the ignition is on, use the left front and rear door window switches to operate the respective windows.



Hazard Warning Light Switch

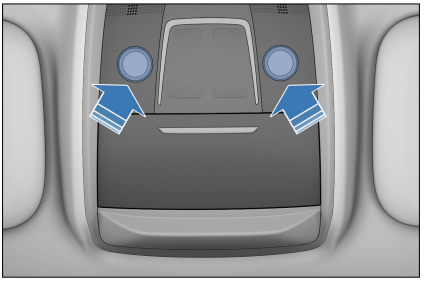
- When the ⚠ button is pressed, all turn signals and turn signal indicators on the instrument cluster start flashing. They all stop flashing when the ⚠ button is pressed again.



Interior Light Switch

Front Interior Light Switches

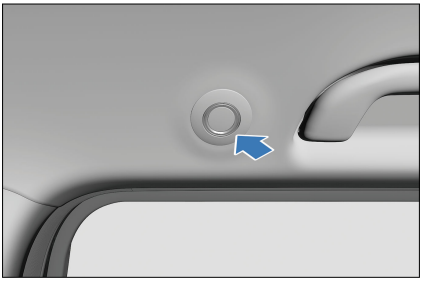
- Press the interior light buttons to turn on left/right interior lights. Press again to turn them off.



- With the Auto Interior Lights option selected on the infotainment, if any door is open with the ignition on, touching the interior light will switch the brightness between high and low levels instead of turning the light off.
- When the vehicle is powered off and "Auto Interior Lights" is enabled, the interior lights will automatically turn off after the door has been open for a period of time. Any other operations during this period restart the timer.
- To select or unselect the Auto Interior Lights option, slide down from the top of the infotainment touchscreen to access the shortcut screen.

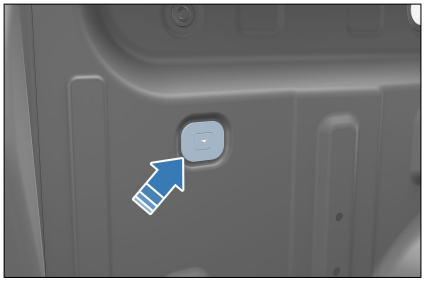
Rear Side Interior Light Switches

- With the vehicle in any power mode, press this button to turn on the left/right interior light. Press again to turn them off.



Cargo Box Light Switch

- Interior switch: In "P" gear, slide down the top status bar on the infotainment screen to display the shortcut page to turn on or off the pickup bed lights.
- Exterior switch: In "P" gear, press the button on the left wall of the pickup bed to turn on or off the lights.



04 USING AND DRIVING

Charging/Discharging..... 80
Batteries..... 96
Usage Precautions..... 100
Starting and Driving..... 119
Driver Assistance..... 140

Charging/ Discharging

Charging Instructions

Charging Safety Warnings

- The charging connector uses high-voltage current. Minors are prohibited to charge the vehicle or touch the charging equipment. Keep them away from the vehicle during charging.
- Charge the vehicle in a safe environment, and avoid charging in thunderstorms, or areas with hazardous liquids, fire or heat sources, or flammable or explosive items.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock and personal injury, never operate the equipment with wet hands or touch the exposed metal of the charge port or charge base.
- Since charging may affect medical electronic devices and even cause serious personal injury or death, if you use any medical electronic device (such as implantable pacemaker or implantable cardiovascular defibrillator), before charging, confirm with the device manufacturer whether charging affects the normal operation of the device.

Warnings for charging equipment

- Use specialty charging equipment compliant with local standards.
  - To avoid charging failure or fire, do not modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and related ports. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for handling if there is a fault.
  - Ensure the quality of charging equipment.
- Never use the charging equipment if the household power strip cable becomes soft, if the charging connector cable is worn out, if the insulation layer is cracked, or in case of any other damage.
- Never use the equipment when the charging connector, power plug, or power strip is disconnected or broken, or if there is any sign of surface damage.
- Charging equipment grounding instructions:
  - The equipment must be properly grounded. In the event of failure of or damage to the equipment, the ground cable provides a minimum impedance to circuit discharge and thereby reducing the risk of electric shock.
  - The equipment comes with a ground cable connecting its ground point with that of the power plug, which must match a properly installed and well-grounded power supply outlet.
- When charging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires.

Warnings before charging

- Ensure that there is no water or foreign materials in the charge ports of the vehicle, power supply equipment, and charging equipment, and no damage or bad effect caused by metal terminal rust or corrosion. In the event of any of the situations above, do not charge.

Warnings during charging

- To prevent serious personal injury, pay attention to the following precautions during charging:
  - Do not touch the metal connection of the charge port, charging connector, or plug.

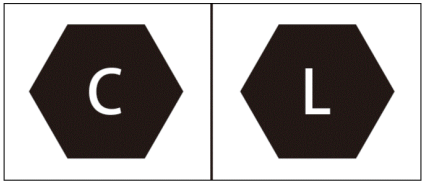
- Do not charge or touch the vehicle in a thunderstorm. Lightning strikes may cause damage to the charging equipment or personal injuries.
- Close the AC charge port cap before DC charging* and the DC charge port* cap before AC charging.
- If anything abnormal is found in the vehicle or charging equipment during charging, such as peculiar smell or smoke, stop immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Do not carry out maintenance work during charging.

Warnings after charging

- Always unplug the charging and discharging equipment and close the charge port door before driving.

Compatibility of vehicle and charging infrastructure*

- The signs are located on the vehicle's charging socket, components of the local charging infrastructure (charging stations and sockets) and on the charging cable.



Charging Precautions

- Although AC and DC charging* can be carried out in any power mode, it is recommended to power off the vehicle before charging to ensure safety. The vehicle cannot be powered on during charging.
- If power supply resumes after short-time outage of the external power grid, BYD charging equipment will re-start charging automatically and no re-connection of the charging equipment is required.
- If you need to stop charging before the battery is fully charged, try to use early stop set for the charger first and then unplug the charger.
- When the vehicle is not used for an extended period, it is recommended to charge it once a month at least.

Precautions for charging equipment

- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, pay attention to the followings:
  - Before starting the vehicle, ensure that the charging equipment is disconnected. The vehicle is ready to drive even if the charging connector is incorrectly inserted, which may damage the charging equipment and the vehicle.
  - Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is open.
  - To prevent failure of the charge port door, do not open and close it repeatedly. The recommended time interval for opening and closing the port door is at least one second.
  - If the charge port door and charging connector are frozen due to weather or other reasons, do not forcibly open the charge port door or pull out the charging connector.
  - To prevent damage to the vehicle and the charge port, do not shake the charging connector during charging.
  - Do not force the charging connector in with the immobilizer system activated.
- Take caution when using the equipment.

- The charging cable has a limited reach. Do not pull or twist the charging cable with force.
- Prevent any mechanical impact, such as fall and collide, on the charging/discharging equipment. Take caution when moving the equipment.
- Do not store or use the charging equipment at a temperature above 50°C.
- Do not place the charging equipment near heaters or other heat sources.

- It is not recommended to use any additional wire or adapter/connector. If an additional adapter is required, choose a suitable cable diameter ($\geqslant$1.5 mm^2) and the adapter/connector specifications must meet requirements.

Precautions before charging

- Do not force the charge port door open when it is locked.
- Make sure that the charging connector and the charge port are free of foreign objects, and that the protective cap of the charging connector terminal does not get loose or deformed.
- When the charge port is unlocked, open the port, hold the charging connector, align the connector with the charge port and push it in, making sure that they are properly connected.

Precautions during charging

- It is recommended that no one stay in the vehicle during charging.
- The A/C can be used as normal while the vehicle is being charged. However, the charging power may be reduced.
- It is recommended to park the vehicle in a ventilated area. Make sure that the air intake grille is not blocked.
- It is normal that when the battery is heating up and working, the charging power displayed on the instrument cluster may fluctuate temporarily.
- Battery cooling may start, and the compressor, fan and other components work when necessary. It is normal that there will be some noise under the hood.
- Before charging is complete, battery equalization is activated for longer battery life and thus the charging time may be longer.
- The charging cable must not be placed in a spiral during charging, as this will affect heat dissipation.
- In the case of low-temperature charging, the battery thermal management can improve the low-temperature charging capacity of the battery, but the charging time is prolonged and the heating power consumption is increased. These are normal phenomenons.
  - In low-temperature regions, it is recommended to charge the vehicle in a heated indoor space.
  - In high-temperature regions, charging in a cool and ventilated place is recommended.
- The estimated remaining time to full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster and may vary slightly across temperatures, SOC, and charging facilities.

Precautions after charging:

- Stop charging first and make sure the charge port is unlocked.
- Hold the charging connector with one hand and remove the connector by pressing and holding its button*.
- After charging, unlock it first and then pull out the charging connector.

- Do not force the charging connector out while the charge port is locked, otherwise the charge port may be damaged.
- After unplugging the charging connector, make sure that the charge port's cap and door are closed, otherwise water or foreign materials may enter the port and affect its normal use.

Recommendations for improving the driving experience:

- When the State of Charge (SOC) bar on the instrument cluster turns red, the high-voltage battery is about to be exhausted. Please charge it immediately, otherwise the service life of the high-voltage battery will be reduced.
- It is recommended to charge the vehicle immediately after using it, for better charging performance.

General Charging Troubleshooting

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
Charger is connected and charge starts, but battery cannot be charged.	Charging card in arrears or faulty charging pile.	Consult card balance or contact charging station staff.
	The AC charging connector is not properly plugged in.	Ensure the charger switch has come up. Check cable length and connection correctness.
	Low-voltage battery over-discharges.	Connect the vehicle to another 12V low-voltage battery to charge its own low-voltage battery after the vehicle is powered on.
	The local standard grounded socket has no power supply.	Check whether the power supply is under overload protection and use other sockets.
	The vehicle or AC charging connector fails.	Stop charging and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider if power system fault warning light or charging system fault message is found on the instrument cluster.
	The high-voltage battery temperature is too low or too high.	Warm up or cool down the high-voltage battery. Keep the vehicle in an environment with appropriate temperature and charge it when the temperature becomes normal.
	The high-voltage battery has been fully charged.	When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the charging will stop automatically.
Charging stops midway.	The charging cable is not connected properly.	Verify that whether the charging connection cable is loosely connected.
	Power outage	After the power is restored in a period of time, the charging connection should be connected again to start charging.

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
	The high-voltage battery temperature is too high.	In this case, charging stops automatically. Charge the vehicle when the battery temperature returns to a normal level.
	The vehicle or charging pile fails.	If there is any fault prompt for the charging pile or the vehicle, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Charging

- Check before charging:
  - Ensure that power supply equipment, charging connector, charge port, and charging connection device are free of defects, such as cable wear, rusted ports, cracked casings, or foreign objects in the ports.
  - When the metal terminals of the charging connector, charge port, power plug, or power socket are loose or damaged by rust, corrosion, or ablation.
  - When the charging connector, port, power plug, or socket is visibly stained or damp, wipe them with a dry and clean cloth to ensure that the connection is dry and clean.
- In any of these cases, do not charge. Otherwise, personal injury may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
- Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.

Using Mode 2 Charging Cable

Before Mode 2 charging

- To prevent serious personal injury, carefully read ***P80*** in "Charging Instructions".
- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, carefully read ***P81*** in "Charging Instructions" carefully.

Equipment

- This Mode 2 charging cable* includes a power plug (complying with local standards), a charging connector, a control box, and a charging cable. The plug should be connected to a standard household power socket, and the charging connector to the vehicle's charge port.
- Use household sockets that meet the local standards to prevent line damage or tripping due to high-power charging, which can affect the normal use of other devices.
- Connect the vehicle to an outlet that meets local standards to charge the vehicle.
- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

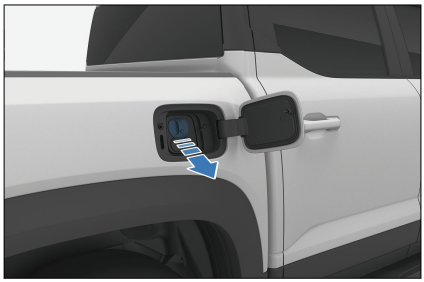
- It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider or local electrician to select an appropriate power supply according to requirements of the charging equipment.
- When using mode 2 charging cable, activate the immobilizer system of the charge port.

Charging

1. Open the charge port door:
   - With the vehicle doors unlocked and preferably powered off, press the charge port door to open it.



2. Open the AC charge port cap:
   - Open protective cap of the charging connector and vehicle socket. Make sure that no obstacles exist between the head of the charging connector and the end of the charging socket.



3. Connect to the power supply terminal:
   - Plug the Mode 2 charging cable into a household socket. The power indicator of the cable becomes solid red.
4. Connect to the vehicle port:
   - Plug the charging connector correctly into the port.
   - After the charging connector is inserted, the charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster. The charging indicator of the Mode 2 charging cable flashes green.

REMINDER

- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays charging parameters and the charging sign.
  - You can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See ***P88*** for details.
- Reservation charging cannot be used when the battery is too low.

Stopping charging

1. End charging:
   - The charging automatically ends when the vehicle is fully charged.
   - To end the charging early, proceed to the next step.
2. Unplug the charging connector:
   - If the immobilizer of the electrical lock is deactivated, you can pull out the charging connector directly.
   - If the immobilizer is activated, press the unlock button on the key or press the door handle microswitch with the key nearby, and then pull out the charging connector.

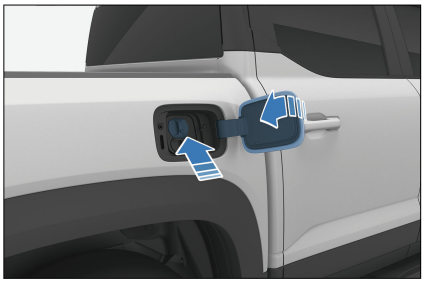
REMINDER

- To unlock the vehicle, press the unlock button on the key (when charging the vehicle with ignition switched off) or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby).
- When the immobilizer system is activated, unlock the vehicle to release the charge port immobilizer before pulling out the charging connector.Remove the connector promptly; otherwise, the charge port will re-lock.

REMINDER

- You can activate or deactivate the immobilizer on the infotainment touchscreen, see ***P94*** for details.
- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking. For the operating procedure, see ***P96*** in "Charging Port Immobilizer System".
- If you cannot pull the charging connector out directly when the charge port's immobilizer system is deactivated, try to unlock the vehicle and pull it again.

- Disconnect the power plug.
- Close the charge port cap and the port door.
- Store the charging equipment properly.



REMINDER

- Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is fully open.

Using AC Charging Piles

Before using AC charging piles:

- To prevent serious personal injury, carefully read ***P80*** in "Charging Instructions".
- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, carefully read ***P81*** in "Charging Instructions" carefully.

Equipment

- AC charging box*:
  - consists of a charging box, a charging connector, and a connecting cable. For information on circuit breaker and emergency stop switch, see the charging box user manual.
  - Use a standard-compliant household charging box. For how to use the charging equipment, refer to its user manual and follow the operating steps.
- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.
- Single-phase AC charging pile
  - Charge the vehicle using a single-phase AC charging pile in a public place. Since some charging piles are not equipped with charging connectors, AC charging connectors need to be prepared.
- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

Charging

1. Unlock the vehicle, then open the charge port door and cap:
   - See ***P84*** to unlock the charge port door, open the port door and the AC charge port cap.
2. Connect to the power supply terminal:
   - Skip this step for AC charging piles equipped with charging connectors.

- Use a self-prepared AC charging connector to connect your vehicle to the single-phase AC charging pile with no charging connector.

3. Connect to the vehicle port:
   - Plug the charging connector into the port and make sure it is tight.
4. Charging settings:
   - Skip this step if a public AC charging pile without any setting option is used.
   - For public single-phase AC charging pile with settings, swipe the card or scan the QR code. See the user manual for charging pile details.
5. The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
  - At this point, you can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See ***P88*** for the configuration process.

Stopping charging

1. End charging:
   - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or charging is complete.
2. Unplug the charging connector:
   - Disconnect as per the instructions in Using Mode 2 Charging Cable.
3. Disconnect the power plug.
   - If Mode 2 charging cable is used, it is recommended to unplug the charging connector from the vehicle first and then the plug from the charging point.
   - Skip this step for AC charging piles equipped with charging connectors.
4. Close the AC charge port door (see instructions for Mode 2 charging).
5. Store the equipment properly.
   - Place the charging connector in its designated location in the charging pile.

Using DC Charging Piles*

Before using DC charging piles:

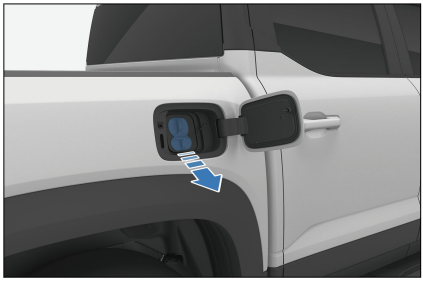
- To prevent serious personal injury, carefully read ***P80*** in "Charging Instructions".
- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, carefully read ***P81*** in "Charging Instructions" carefully.

Equipment

- Charge the vehicle using a DC charging pile in a public place, which is typically installed at a specific charging station.
- Equipment specifications: Please check the instructions for the charging piles.
- Charging time: Refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

Charging

1. Open the charge port door and port cap:
   - Unlock the vehicle and switch the ignition off before charging.
   - Unlock the charge port door, then open the port door and the DC charge port cap.



2. Connect the vehicle port:
   - Plug the charging connector into the port and lock it.
3. Start charging:
   - Operate the charging equipment to start charging.
4. The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.

Stopping charging

1. End the charging:
   - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or the charging is complete.
2. Unplug the charging connector:
   - Press the mechanical lock button of the DC charging connector to pull out the connector, or pull out the charging connector directly as needed.
3. Close the charge port cap and the port door.
4. When charging is complete, organize the charging equipment and store the charging connector in its designated position.

CAUTION

- After charging, if the charging connector cannot be pulled out, please contact our customer service immediately.

Smart Charging

The charging mode can be set on the infotainment system. To access or exit the setting:

- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging** → **Smart Charging** to access the scheduled charging setting screen.
- To exit the scheduled charging screen, tap or .

Smart charging settings

① Scheduled charging switch

② Charging start time

③ Repeat cycle

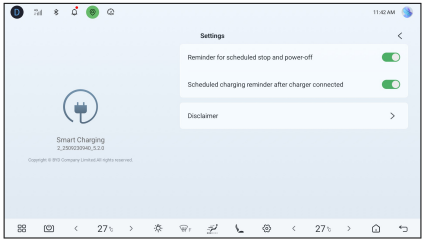
④ Settings



- The factory default setting is to charge the vehicle immediately. That is, scheduled charging is disabled.
- To schedule a charging, toggle the scheduled charging ON ①, set the charging start time ② and repeat cycle ③, then save the settings.
- After the schedule is set up, if you connect the charging connector or

press the power button to power off the vehicle, you will be reminded through the infotainment touchscreen that scheduled charging has been set. You can switch to instant charging if needed.

- You can tap the smart charging setting icon ④ to turn off the charging connector connected alert and power-off alert.



CAUTION

- The smart charging function is developed for BYD's slow AC charging equipment only. Please disable this function when using slow AC charging equipment that is not certified by BYD. Otherwise, scheduled or immediate charging may fail due to no response from the equipment, resulting in low SOC or even low voltage of the high-voltage battery.

REMINDER

- The "charge now" option on the reminder screen is valid for the current schedule only. To cancel all schedules, toggle scheduled charging off on the corresponding screen.
- Smart charging is dedicated for BYD AC charging piles. If you need to use this function in a public charging facility, make sure it supports scheduling from the vehicle system.
- In the event of low battery, the vehicle is charged to the minimum level before scheduled charging begins. In this process, the infotainment system still gives reminder messages for power-off and charging connector connection, and a related message is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- The schedule setting is invalid for DC charging. Charging begins immediately after a DC charging connector is connected.

Discharging Instructions

- This vehicle is equipped with functions of internal discharging, external discharging, and discharging in the cargo box. External discharging refers to vehicle-to-load (V2L) discharging.

WARNING

- Do not touch any metal terminal of the discharging socket or the vehicle charge port during discharging.
- Stop discharging immediately if there are any abnormalities such as peculiar smell and smoke.
- See ***P80*** for discharging safety warnings.
- Store the discharging equipment in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When discharging, do not place the equipment in the cargo box, under the front of the vehicle, or

WARNING

near the tires to prevent it from falling and being rolled over by the vehicle and trampled on.

- Never use the equipment if the power strip cable becomes soft, if the discharging connector cable is worn out, if the insulation layer is cracked, or if any other damage occurs.
- Never use the equipment when the discharging connector or power strip is disconnected or broken, or when there is any sign of surface damage.
- The engine starts when the vehicle is discharged to a low SOC. Do not discharge in a confined space or near combustible or explosive materials.

CAUTION

- For precautions concerning use of the discharge connection device, refer to ***P81***.
- Before V2L discharging, ensure that the load is turned off.

REMINDER

- Before discharging, confirm the vehicle SOC and estimate the remaining driving range. This function is recommended when the vehicle has a higer SOC.
- When the vehicle is powered off, the static power consumption of the vehicle will increase if the discharging connection device is connected for an extended period without any output. Therefore, removing the discharging connector when the device is not used is recommended.
- BYD's original discharging connection device is required, and the vehicle discharging function may not work properly with non-BYD products.

REMINDER

Discharging

Check before discharging

- Discharging safety warnings are as those given in "Charging Safety Warnings". Carefully read and observe these warnings to prevent serious personal injury.
- Discharging precautions are as those given in "Charging Precautions". Carefully read and observe these precautions to prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle.
- Ensure that the vehicle SOC is at least 15%.
- In any of the cases below, do not discharge. Otherwise, personal injuries may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
  - Ensure the discharge connection device casing is not cracked, no cable is worn and its plug is free from rust or obstructions.
  - There is water or foreign material inside the charge port, or the metal terminals are damaged by rust, corrosion, and other abnormalities.

Equipment

- Vehicle-to-load (V2L) equipment: The device consists of a discharging connector, a power strip, a cable, and a discharge connector protective cover.

- The equipment used must comply with local standards. See the equipment that came with your vehicle for details.

Starting discharging

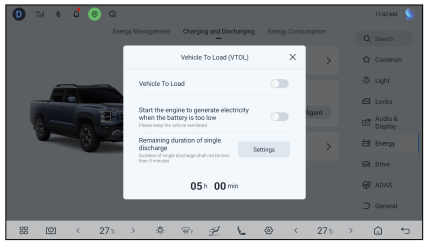
1. Open the charge port door and port cap:
   - Before discharging, disarm the anti-theft alarm system.
   - Unlock the charge port door and open the port door and cap (see ***P84***).
2. Connect the discharge equipment:
   - Firmly connect the discharge connection equipment to the charge port.
3. Start discharging:
   - After the switch button* on the discharging socket is pressed, the socket indicator stays on (red), indicating that the socket can be used.
   - After the equipment is connected, discharging will begin and related information will be displayed on the instrument cluster.

Stopping discharging

1. End discharging:
   - Disconnect the load.
   - In an emergency, proceed directly to the next step (which is not recommended).
2. Disconnect the discharge connection device:
   - With doors unlocked, unplug the connector from the charge port. For discharging connectors with a mechanical button, press the button before unplugging.
   - Close the charge port cap and the port door (see ***P84***).
3. Organize the equipment:
   - Store the equipment properly when discharging is complete.

Setting discharging duration

- After the discharge connector is plugged in, V2L discharging will be automatically toggled on and a countdown to discharging will be displayed on the instrument cluster and infotainment touchscreen. The default duration of a discharge set on the infotainment touchscreen is five hours.
- Go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging** to access the Vehicle To Load setting screen.
  - After the vehicle is connected to the discharging connector, toggle **Vehicle To Load** on or off.



  - When the vehicle is discharged to a low SOC, tap the "Start the engine to generate electricity when the power is too low" switch if it is necessary to start the engine to continue discharging.
  - Tap the Settings button for single discharge to set the desired discharge duration on the corresponding screen.

⚠ CAUTION

- Discharging cannot be toggled on without connecting the connector.

CAUTION

In that case, when tapped, the Vehicle To Load button will be grayed out after a while, which is a normal phenomenon.

- Discharging may stop in advance if the vehicle battery is too low, if battery is lower and no gasoline is available to generate electricity, or if the set discharging time is too long. This is a normal phenomenon.

Internal Discharging

Preparation before discharging:

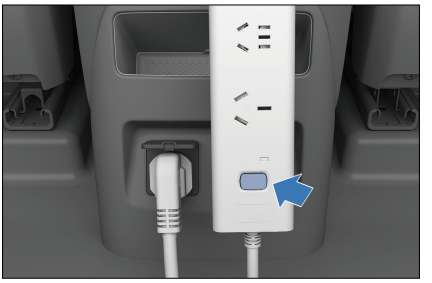
- Make sure the ignition is switched on.
- If the surface of the socket is damaged, rusted, cracked or the connection is too loose, do not discharge.
- When the plug is stained or damp, cut off the power first. Wipe them with a dry and clean cloth to ensure that the discharging plug is dry and clean.

Equipment

- Equipment specifications: Single-phase discharging. Its specifications shall comply with local standards. See discharging socket in your vehicle for details.

Connecting the discharging equipment

1. Connect the equipment:
   - Plug the electrical equipment to the discharging socket in the vehicle.
2. Start discharging:
   - When the equipment is connected, the vehicle starts discharging.
   - The indicator lights up in the upper left corner of the instrument cluster, indicating that the socket in the vehicle is discharging.



3. Stop discharging:
   - Discharging can be stopped by unplugging the equipment or powering off the vehicle and then unplugging the equipment.

CAUTION

- When the ignition is off, internal discharging cannot be used.

Discharging in the Pickup Bed

Preparation before discharging:

- Make sure the ignition is switched on.
- If the surface of the socket is damaged, rusted, cracked or the connection is too loose, do not discharge.
- When the plug is stained or damp, cut off the power first. Wipe them with a dry and clean cloth to ensure that the discharging plug is dry and clean.

Equipment

- Equipment specifications: Single-phase discharging. Its specifications shall comply with local standards. See discharging socket in your vehicle for details.

Connecting the discharging equipment

1. Connect the equipment:

- Plug the electrical equipment to the discharging socket in the vehicle.

2. Start discharging:
   - When the equipment is connected, the vehicle starts discharging.
   - The indicator lights up in the upper left corner of the instrument cluster, indicating that the socket in the vehicle is discharging.



3. Stop discharging:
   - Discharging can be stopped by unplugging the equipment or powering off the vehicle and then unplugging the equipment.

WARNING

- Never use the discharging socket of the pickup bed in a thunderstorm or when washing the vehicle to avoid electric shock.

CAUTION

- Note the socket parameter requirements for discharging in the pickup bed (or in the vehicle). Do not connect electrical equipment with excessive power or connect too many electrical equipment to avoid triggering the power-off protection. If the power-off protection is triggered, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for a check.

Target SOC Setting

- When the vehicle runs in dual-mode condition, the target SOC function is available to save battery power for operations such as rapid acceleration. When the vehicle runs stably, the battery SOC fluctuates around the target SOC.
- The vehicle controller will memorize the last set target SOC.

REMINDER

- When the engine has been started and the vehicle is running at a stable speed, part of the torque produced by the engine will drive the generator to generate electricity and charge the high-voltage battery.
- If the difference between the current SOC and the SOC balance value is large, the balancing time may be long.

Target SOC settings

Target SOC refers to the battery level that you expect the vehicle to maintain during driving. To set this value, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Energy Manager**.

- SAVE mode prioritizes battery power saving, keeping battery power not below the target set as far as possible. If the destination is convenient for vehicle charging, lowering the target SOC help make the best use of the electric driving power and reduce fuel consumption. Otherwise, a

higher target SOC is recommended to improve the driving experience.

- When the SAVE mode is off, fuel economy is prioritized, although battery power keeping is considered.

CAUTION

- SAVE mode works in HEV mode only, so it does not respond if turned on in EV mode. For a better driving experience, it is better to switch to HEV mode before turning SAVE mode on.

Mode Memory

- When the vehicle SOC is high, the vehicle will automatically switch to EV mode when it is powered on. EV mode is recommended to be given priority to.
- When the vehicle SOC is moderate, the vehicle defaults to the previous dynamic mode when it is powered on. After power-on, you can manually select the mode with the mode switch.

Electricity Generation by Pressing the Accelerator Pedal

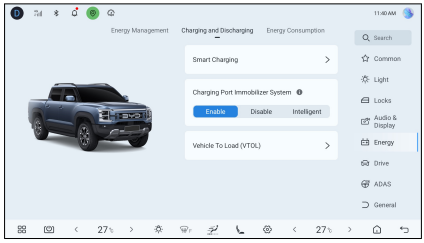
- When the vehicle is in Park and HEV mode, if the SOC is lower than a certain value, pressing the accelerator pedal can generate electricity. Controlling the accelerator pedal depth can generate electricity with different power.

REMINDER

- It is recommended not to press the accelerator pedal for a long time to generate electricity.
- In special working conditions, such as low or high temperatures, the power of electricity generated by pressing the accelerator pedal is limited by the charging power or the motor generating capacity, and the power changes on the instrument cluster.

Charging Port Immobilizer System

In order to prevent the charging connector from being stolen, the vehicle charge port is anti-theft with the charging port immobilizer system. The charging port immobilizer system is disabled by default. To enable it, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging**.



- When the immobilizer is in Enable or Intelligent mode, unlock the vehicle and unplug the charging connector during charging in the following ways:
  - With the ignition off, press the unlock button on the smart key to unlock.
  - Press the microswitch next to the exterior handle of the driver's door to unlock.
  - Press the central unlock button on the driver's door to unlock.
  - The charging connector unlocks automatically when the vehicle is fully charged (for "intelligent" mode only).

REMINDER

No.	Charge Port Immobilizer System Status	Door Anti-theft Lock Status	Vehicle Fully Charged or Not	Charging Connector Removable or Not
1	Enabled	Locked	/	No
2	Enabled	Enabled	/	Yes
3	Disabled	Locking	/	Yes
4	Disabled	Enabled	/	Yes
5	Intelligent	Locked	The vehicle is fully charged	Yes
			The vehicle is not fully charged	No
6	Intelligent	Enabled	/	Yes

- As shown in the table above, if the vehicle is in state 2/3/4/6, apart from the above-mentioned unlocking operations, you can unlock and pull out the charging connector by pressing its button (Configurations of the actual vehicle prevail). However, this may affect the service life of the charge port or charging connector. This is an emergency action that is not recommended to be taken frequently.

REMINDER

- The connector can be pulled out within 30 seconds after it is unlocked. Otherwise, the electric lock will lock again and needs to be unlocked again for pulling out.
- Unlock the charging connector during charging, and a message displays on the instrument cluster:" Warm tip: Charging is paused. Please wait a while if you want to continue charging." At this time, the charging power is 0 kW on the instrument cluster. After waiting for 30 seconds or manually locking, the charging will continue.

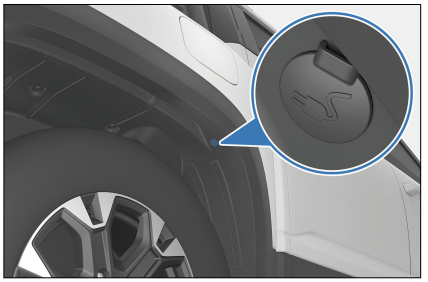
REMINDER

- After the locked vehicle is fully charged, the charging connector will be automatically unlocked when the immobilizer system of the charge port is disabled. When this system is enabled or in the intelligent mode, the charging connector must be manually unlocked following the above steps.
- Please close the charge port door after pulling out the charging connector.
- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Emergency Unlocking of the Charge Port

When the charging connector cannot be unplugged due to failure of the anti-theft lock, unlock the charge port manually and unplug the charging connector.

1. There is a charging connector emergency cable on the fender below the charge port.
2. Open the cable latch and pull the emergency cable to unlock the charging connector.
3. Reset the emergency cable latch after unlocking.



REMINDER

- The cable is effective only when the vehicle is locked.
- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Driving Range Display*

- The driving range display mode can be adjusted according to your preference. The default setting is standard mode.
- You can change the mode on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Audio & Display** → **Instrument**.
  - Standard mode: displays the driving range based on the result of comprehensive working condition test.
  - Dynamic mode: displays the estimated driving range based on the available battery power and current average energy consumption.
- The set driving range display mode is memorized by the system.
  - When the vehicle is powered off and then on, the display mode set last time will be maintained.

REMINDER

- When the Dynamic driving range display mode is set:
  - The driving range that is displayed after a full charge may vary, depending on calculations of the energy consumed the last time the vehicle is used.
  - The driving range actually displayed will be adjusted based on the state of the vehicle's air conditioner, the driving mode (ECO, NORMAL, SPORT, etc.) selected, and the driver's driving habits, so as to match the vehicle's actual driving range.

Batteries

High-Voltage Battery

- One of the main power sources of the vehicle is high-voltage battery, which is located under the vehicle floor and can be charged repeatedly. The main ways to charge the high-voltage battery through an external power supply are: Using mode 2 charging cable, using AC charging piles, using

DC charging piles*, and using motor when the vehicle is braking, coasting, or the engine is on.

WARNING

- Do not disassemble, move, or alter high-voltage battery components and connecting cables as their connectors can cause serious burns or electric shock and may result in personal injury or death. The orange cables are part of high-voltage wiring harness. Users must not repair the vehicle's high-voltage system by themselves. If any repair is required, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- If the high-voltage battery is damaged, there may be a delayed risk fire. In this Case, it is necessary to place the vehicle or the damaged pattery under surveillance in a dedicate and secure storage area so as to prevent the start of a fire

CAUTION

- As the high-voltage battery is arranged at the bottom of the vehicle, careful driving is recommended in case of bumpy roads.

REMINDER

- When the ignition is switched on, the high-voltage lines will be connected.
- For new vehicles with normal high-voltage battery status, the pure electric mileage will change due to different driving habits, road conditions, temperatures,

REMINDER

and whether the electrical equipment is turned on or off.

- To prolong the battery life and ensure the battery safety, the vehicle switches to trickle charging mode at high SOC, and the charging time may be prolonged.
- Due to the chemical characteristics of the battery itself, the battery capacity of vehicles that have been used for a period of time has natural degradation, and their pure electric mileage will reduce. When you find that the pure electric mileage of your vehicle has decreased, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for check. The store-side inspection can confirm whether the reduction of pure electric mileage is normal.

High-Voltage Battery Maintenance

- For optimal battery performance, use an AC charging connector to fully charge the battery regularly, and the recommended frequency is once a week at least.
- If the vehicle is going to be idle for over seven days, it is recommended to keep the SOC between 40% and 60% to extend vehicle service life. If the vehicle is going to be idle for over three months, charge the battery fully and discharge it down to 40% to 60% SOC, to avoid battery degradation or even damage.

Low Temperature Heating for High-Voltage Battery

- In a low-temperature environment, the high-voltage battery heating system starts up to heat the battery, speed up the low-temperature charging and ensure the power performance and driving range of the vehicle.

WARNING

- Non-professionals must not open the high-voltage battery pack. Do not disassemble or dismantle the low-voltage battery. Any organization or individual to do so shall bear the responsibility for environmental pollution or accidents.

CAUTION

- If the high-voltage battery fails, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- It is recommended to use the vehicle at temperatures between -20°C to 40°C. Higher or lower operating temperatures of the high-voltage battery may prolong the charging time.
- To ensure long term performance, avoid continuously exposing the vehicle to high temperatures or extreme cold environment for over 24 hours.

Recycling the High-Voltage Battery

- When the vehicle reaches the end of its service life, the owner shall hand over the power battery to a qualified recycling service provider in accordance with local laws and regulations.
- Do not disassemble or dismantle the high-voltage battery yourself, or hand it over to non-compliant channels. The vehicle owner shall bear the corresponding legal responsibility for any environmental pollution or safety incidents caused.

Low-Voltage Battery (12 V)

- The vehicle's low-voltage battery features the intelligent charging function. When the low-voltage battery SOC is low, the vehicle can initiate the high-voltage battery or engine to charge the low-voltage battery, thereby extending its service duration.

REMINDER

- When the power mode is in OFF and intelligent charging is in progress, the vehicle may produce a sound which is heard when switching to OK mode. This is a normal phenomenon.
- When leaving the vehicle, make sure all electrical equipment is turned off and the doors are closed.
- During intelligent charging of the low-voltage battery, high-voltage battery energy will be consumed, resulting in the decrease of high-voltage battery SOC or pure-electric driving range displayed on the instrument cluster, which is a normal phenomenon.
- If the high-voltage battery SOC is low, the vehicle may start the engine to generate electricity. During this process, a small amount of fuel will be consumed,

REMINDER

and a small amount of exhaust will be emitted.

- It is not necessary to disconnect the low-voltage battery's negative terminal when the vehicle is to be parked for a long period.

Waking up the Vehicle from Low SOC

Wake-up by the driver's door microswitch

- The low-voltage battery may enter a dormant state after long-term parking. In that case, the vehicle cannot be remotely located or unlocked with the smart key.
- In this case, press and hold the microswitch on the driver's door handle (see ***P56*** for details) while carrying the smart key to wake up the battery and unlock the vehicle.

REMINDER

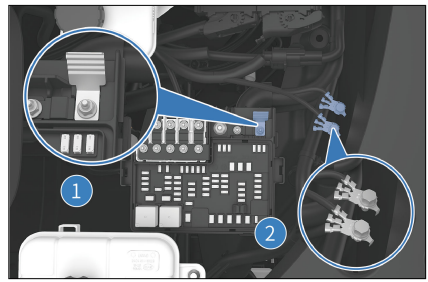
- If the low-voltage battery is extremely low, the instrument cluster may display corresponding messages and the vehicle may goes dormant again. In this case, power on the vehicle and keep this state ideally for more than 15 minutes.

Wake-up by jump start

- When the vehicle cannot be woken up and unlocked using the driver's door microswitch, it means that the low-voltage battery is exhausted. Use the mechanical key to open the door. Then, use a 12V power supply and two jump-start cables to start the vehicle.
- After jump starting, start the vehicle and shift it to the OK mode to charge the low-voltage battery. It is recommended to keep the vehicle in this state for at least 15 minutes.
- Jump starting can only be performed through the dedicated interface of the under-hood PDB.

  ① Positive terminal on the front hood PDB

  ② Negative terminal



- If the vehicle cannot be woken up and started following the above steps, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

- Never jump start another vehicle with this vehicle, because this may damage your low-voltage battery.
- Make sure the environment is well-ventilated and free from any fire sources.
- The low-voltage battery contains an intelligent control module. To prevent battery damage, do not disassemble or damage this battery, except in an emergency.
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery before performing parts replacement and vehicle repairs.

CAUTION

- It is recommended that jump starting be performed under professional guidance due to the limited operating space and electrical risks in the under-bonnet PDB area.
- Use a 12–14.2 V jump-starting power supply and limit each jump-starting attempt to one minute, or the low-voltage battery may be damaged.
- Do not clean the low-voltage battery with liquids, and take caution to prevent liquid ingress.

Usage Precautions

Break-in Period

- If the powertrain is hard to start or frequently stops turning, inspect the vehicle immediately.
- If the powertrain makes any abnormal sounds, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- If the powertrain has severe coolant and oil leakage, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- The powertrain needs break-in. It is recommended that this be done within the first 2,000 km in HEV-ECO mode by smooth driving, instead of high-speed driving. The following practices can effectively prolong vehicle service life:
  - Avoid flooring the accelerator pedal when starting and driving the vehicle.
  - Avoid speeding.
  - Avoid emergency braking within the first 300 km.
  - Do not maintain a high or low speed for too long.
  - Do not use the vehicle to tow other vehicles within the first 2,000 km of mileage.
  - During the break-in period, the proportion of driving in HEV mode (with the engine involved in working) shall not be less than 50%.

Trailer Towing

Towing capacity

- The towing capacity depends on various factors such as vehicle specifications, loads, road conditions, and trailer specifications. For driving safety, avoid speeding and overloading. See the table below for specifications.
- The total towing weight must not exceed the limits below:

Configuration 1

Item	Parameter	Note
Maximum towing capacity (braked)[kg]	3500	Maximum towing capacity when the trailer is braked
Maximum towing capacity (unbraked)[kg]	750	Maximum towing capacity when the trailer is unbraked
Maximum vertical load (kg)	350	Maximum vertical load on ball joint

Item	Parameter	Note
1. The maximum towing capacity equals the total trailer weight, which includes all cargo and additional equipment.		
2. Maximum vertical load refers to the downward pressure exerted by the weight of the trailer on the trailer hitch when the vehicle and the trailer are stationary.		

Configuration 2

Item	Parameter	Note
Maximum towing capacity (braked)[kg]	2500	Maximum towing capacity when the trailer is braked
Maximum towing capacity (unbraked)[kg]	750	Maximum towing capacity when the trailer is unbraked
Maximum vertical load (kg)	250	Maximum vertical load on ball joint
1. The maximum towing capacity equals the total trailer weight, which includes all cargo and additional equipment.		
2. Maximum vertical load refers to the downward pressure exerted by the weight of the trailer on the trailer hitch when the vehicle and the trailer are stationary.		

WARNING

- The driver must be qualified for towing the total mass (including both the vehicle and trailer).
- The vertical load on the device connecting the towing vehicle and the trailer must be at least 4% of the total trailer weight or 25 kg (whichever is heavier), without exceeding the maximum allowable vertical load on the ball joint of the trailer. Unbalanced loads on the trailer wheels or heavier loads at the rear may cause the trailer to sway, resulting in loss of vehicle control.
- Make sure no one rides in the trailer during towing.
- Always ensure that the cargo is secured in the trailer and cannot move. Moving cargo may cause loss of vehicle control, resulting in serious injury or death.

WARNING

- To avoid potential accidents and serious injury, never exceed the maximum towing capacity of the trailer hitch or maximum vertical load of the ball joint.
- To avoid loss of vehicle stability or danger, never attempt to tow a trailer when:
  - Using a faulty tire.
  - Using a temporarily repaired tire.
  - Using a spare tire.

WARNING

- Please observe applicable local laws and regulations regarding towing. Never modify the vehicle.
- When the trailer is equipped with an electromagnetic brake, confirm with the trailer manufacturer for the installation method of the electromagnetic brake synchronizer.
- BYD does not assume any responsibility for vehicle damage or injuries resulting from failure to comply with the proper guidelines of towing in this manual. Damage caused by towing a trailer is not covered by warranty.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is loaded with equipment, passengers, or cargo, the allowable vertical load is reduced, which decreases the towing capacity. In towing mode, the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) must not be exceeded. GVWR is printed on the vehicle nameplate.

Tire pressure during towing

- To tow a trailer, adjust the tire pressure to accommodate additional loads. Keep front tires inflated to 2.5 bar and rear tires to 2.9 bar.
- For towing, the technically permissible maximum mass on the rear axle may be exceeded by up to 15% and the technically permissible laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by up to 100 kg.

Rearview mirror and holders for towing

- The field of view of the side mirrors during towing should comply with the laws and regulations. If the original side mirrors does not meet the using conditions, install appropriate towing mirrors. The towing mirrors can be attached to the surface of the side mirrors or clamped with a holder on the mirror frame. For detailed installation and usage instructions, refer to manuals of the towing mirrors.

WARNING

- Do not tow a trailer in the break-in period.
- Before towing, be sure to:
  - Inflate tires to the specified cold tire inflation pressure.
  - Adjust the interior rearview mirror and side mirrors to provide clear rear views without significant blind spots.
  - Keep the towing vehicle and the trailer horizontal when the trailer hitch is used. If the connection device tilts up and down after connection, confirm whether the vertical load of the towing device is within the allowable range of the vehicle.
  - Check that trailer lights and turn signals operate normally.
  - Check that the trailer brake works normally.
  - Check that all trailer hitch components, accessories, and electrical connectors are in good condition and properly connected. If any problems occur, do not tow the trailer.
  - Check that wheel chocks are available.
  - Check that the trailer loads are evenly distributed.

WARNING

- Place heavy objects in the trailer as near the axle as possible to prevent them from swaying and thus interfering vehicle traveling.
- Make sure the trailer cable does not contact or drag on the ground and has enough slack for turning.

- Store the trailer hitch properly when it is not used.
- Starting to drive:
  - Start the vehicle smoothly and avoid sudden acceleration or emergency braking, or the vehicle may be out of control due to slipping, especially on a slippery road.
  - Crosswinds or rough roads can cause vehicle sway, leading to difficulties in controlling the vehicle. In any situation, whenever you notice any slight sway of the vehicle, hold the steering wheel firmly with both hands and slow down gradually. Never attempt to eliminate sway by increasing the speed.
  - An unloaded towing vehicle combined with a loaded trailer will cause improper load distribution. If this is unavoidable, drive slowly.
- Braking:
  - Sudden braking may cause slipping, bottom scratches, or lose of control.
  - Be sure to at least double the normal following distance because the vehicle braking

WARNING

distance increases during towing.

- Overtaking:
  - Towing a trailer requires a longer distance to overtake.
- Reversing:
  - Be careful to operate and reverse at low speed because reversing while towing is difficult.
- Turning:
  - When making a turn, signal in advance, avoid bumps or sudden turns whenever possible, and keep the vehicle steady.
  - While turning, ensure a larger radius than usual to prevent the trailer from colliding with curbs, road signs, trees, or other obstacles.
- Driving on a slope:
  - Decelerate the vehicle before driving with a trailer on a relatively steep or long slope. Adjusting vehicle speed based on trailer weight, road gradient and battery SOC to reduce the possibility of engine overheating and battery overdischarge.
- Parking on a slope:
  - Avoid parking on a slope. If this is absolutely necessary, operate as follows to make sure the vehicle has stopped completely and chock the wheels:
    1. While one person presses and holds the brake pedal, a second person places wheel

WARNING

chocks under the wheels on the downhill side.

2. When chocks are in place, release the brake pedal and ensure the chocks can bear the weight of the vehicle and trailer (with AVH disabled).

3. Shift into Park and ensure that the electronic parking brake (EPB) has been activated.

- If parking on a slope is necessary, always ensure that all trailer wheels are securely chocked. Failure to do so can result in serious vehicle damage, personal injury, or death.

WARNING

- Drive carefully on slippery roads, such as roads covered in ice, snow or sand, or surfaces such as wet ceramic tiles or epoxy resin. Avoid parking on slopes to prevent vehicle sliding.

CAUTION

- Towing can lead to the degradation of the vehicle driving power, economy, and durability, which is a normal phenomenon.
- When a trailer is coupled, it is normal for the trailer's LED taillights to flash slightly.

General towing troubleshooting

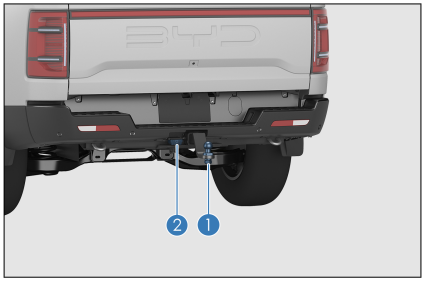
Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
Failure to activate the towing mode	Vehicle speed is not 0	Engage EPB, and activate the towing mode again when the vehicle is stopped.
	Cable disconnected or poor cable connection	Unplug the cable and reconnect it.
Trailer light fault	Poor cable connection	Unplug the cable and reconnect it.
	Blown fuse	Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
Trailer indicator turning red	Accidental disconnection of trailer cable during driving	Pull over as soon as possible and check whether the cable is properly connected; if not, reconnect it. If the cable is damaged, repair it as soon as possible.

Trailer Hitch Instructions

- Equipment

① Trailer hitch

② Electrical connection plug



REMINDER

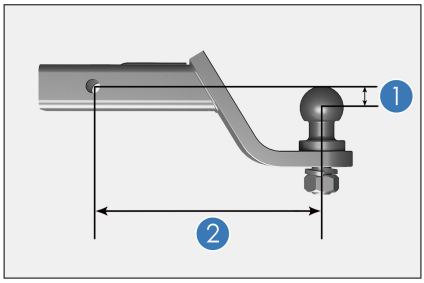
- To avoid rusting, store the trailer hitch properly after use.

Recommended trailer hitch ball dimensions

- The vehicle does not come with a trailer hitch ball. You need to purchase a hitch ball that meets the recommended dimensions (see below). Follow both the hitch ball manufacturer's instructions and this manual for installation. For any inquiries, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

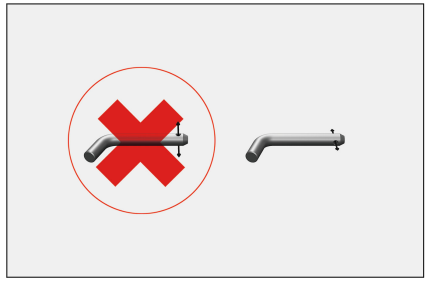
① The recommended hitch ball height: 50-80 mm

② The recommended length: 240-280 mm



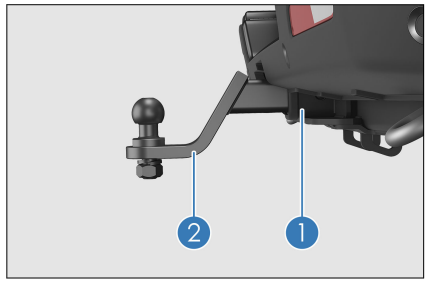
Trailer hitch pin requirement

The hole in the trailer hitch pin shall align with the bend direction of the pin.

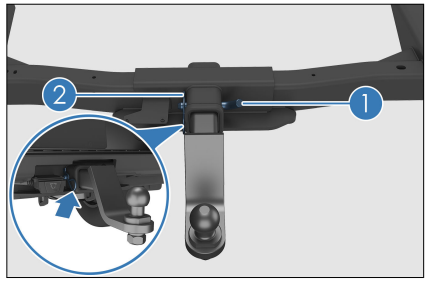


Installing the trailer hitch

1. Insert the trailer hitch sub-assembly ② into the square hole receiver assembly ① until the hole on the square tube of the trailer hitch sub-assembly is aligned with the hole on the square tube of the square hole receiver.



2. Insert the pin ① into the aligned holes, and then insert the pin lock ② into the pin. To assemble the pin lock as shown in the illustration.



3. Check that the hitch is fully inserted into the square receiver. Try pulling down on the hitch to confirm that the hitch does come loose.

WARNING

- Use a trailer hitch that matches the vehicle.
- The hitch is for towing trailers only. Do not use it to get unstuck or tow trapped vehicles as this may cause vehicle damage and even personal injuries.

Removing the trailer hitch

1. Remove the pin lock.
2. Pull out the trailer hitch and store it properly in a safe location.

REMINDER

- If the hitch does not lock into the housing, it may fall out when being pulled down.
- To maintain the hitch, regularly grease the surface with non-resinous grease.

Towing Mode Instructions

Electrical connector

- All trailers are legally required to be equipped with taillights, brake lights, side indicators and turn signals. To provide power for trailer lighting, a built-in 12-pin/7-pin electrical connector is provided for the hitch (The configuration on your actual vehicle may differ).

Configuration 1: 12-pin electrical connector



Configuration 2: 7-pin electrical connector



- Standards for power intake port is AS 4177.5：2004. The pin functions are as follows:

Configuration 1

Pin Number	Function	Color
1	Left turn signal	Yellow
2	Reverse light	Pink
3	Common circuit for terminals 1-7	Black
4	Right turn signal	Green
5	Reserved for future connection	Brown

Pin Number	Function	Color
6	Brake lights	Red
7	Driving light	Brown
8	Power supply	/
9	Reserved for future connection	/
10	Common circuit for terminals 8-10	Black
11	Rear fog lights	Blue
12	Reserved for future connection	/
Note: The circuit working current of pin 8 shall not exceed 15A.		

Configuration 2

Pin Number	Function	Color
1	Left turn signal	Yellow
2	Reverse light	Black
3	Ground	White
4	Right turn signal	Green
5	Reserved (not connected)	Blue
6	Brake light	Red
7	Driving light	Brown

WARNING

- Use only the electrical connection device provided by BYD. Do not directly splice or connect the trailer's electrical circuit by other methods. It may damage the electrical system and cause faults.
- During towing, do not drive the vehicle through saline or electrolyte-containing water. If unavoidable, rinse with fresh water immediately to prevent electrical failure.

WARNING

CAUTION

- Ensure that all electrical connections and trailer lights operate normally before and during towing.

CAUTION

- Do not point high-pressure water directly at the electrical connection devices as this can result in water ingress and device damage.

Operating Procedures

- Preparation before connecting
  - Take out the trailer hitch and insert it into the reserved interface at the rear of the vehicle.
  - Shift into Reverse and enable the towing assist guide on the around view monitor screen.
  - Reverse the vehicle with the aid of the towing assist guide cursor in the reversing image, and make the ball joint of the trailer hitch close to the mechanical connecting device of the vehicle to be towed. Park the vehicle and then get off to connect.
- Activating the towing mode
  - When the vehicle is in Park, switch on the hazard warning lights and connect the trailer cable. The vehicle automatically enters the towing mode with a prompt message (Towing mode activated) and indicator displaying on the instrument.
- Exiting the towing mode
  - When the vehicle is in Park, switch on the hazard warning lights and disconnect the trailer cable. The vehicle automatically exits the towing mode with a prompt message (Towing mode deactivated) displaying and the indicator disappearing on the instrument.
- Automatic signal detection
  - Automatic detection: The trailer lights are activated in a sequence after a 15-second delay when towing mode is enabled.
  - Manual detection: When towing mode is active, enable automatic indicator detection on **Vehicle** screen in infotainment touchscreen, and the detection starts after 15s.

CAUTION

- Ensure that the trailer lights are functioning properly before driving with a trailer. If a fault is detected, immediately stop using it and have it repaired promptly.

- The following driver assistance functions are disabled in towing mode. Please drive with caution.

No.	Function
1	Adaptive cruise control
2	Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)
3	Rear cross traffic alert
4	Rear cross traffic braking
5	Rear collision warning
6	Blind spot detection

No.	Function
7	Automatic emergency braking
8	Emergency lane keeping assist
9	Front cross traffic braking
10	Lane departure warning

WARNING

- Never connect or disconnect the cables when the vehicle is not in Park, or hazards may occur.
- It is recommended to connect or disconnect the cables when the vehicle is powered off to prevent accidental electric shock.

CAUTION

- The maximum speed is limited in towing mode to ensure safety.
- When opening the tailgate in towing mode, pay attention to the distance and clearance between the tailgate and the trailer.
- In towing mode, the driving mode is NORMAL by default and cannot be changed.
- When the vehicle is in Park, disconnect the cable and then shift into other gears to exit the towing mode for driving safety.

Towing mode indicator

- The towing mode indicator is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Vehicle Status	Indicator Status	Indicator
Normal	Solid blue	
Abnormal	Solid red	

- The indicator is off when the trailer cable is not connected.

Influence of trailer towing on mileage

- Trailer towing increases vehicle weight and drag, thus decreasing the available driving range. The trip planning function estimates the range based on the previous energy consumption while towing (using an initial calibrated value for the first trip) and dynamically updates the estimate based on real-time energy consumption during the journey.

How to solve trailer sway

- When trailer sway is detected, the electronic stability control system (ESC) applies braking accordingly to reduce the sway. The ESC indicator

flashes on the instrument cluster. When the vehicle brakes automatically for the sway, the indicator will keep flashing even if you step on the brake pedal until the vehicle becomes stable.

Towing Capacity Grades

Function instruction

- The towing capacity grades function allows the user to select the proper towing option according to the actual trailer weight. The vehicle's power system adjusts the power strategy based on the selected towing option (light, medium, or heavy weights), while ensuring safe driving and staying within the maximum towing capacity.

How to use

- After the trailer cable is connected, a prompt message for trailer driving mode displays in the infotainment touchscreen. Confirm to enter the setting screen, where you can select light, medium, or heavy weight grades with corresponding speed limit settings.
  - Weight classification: light, medium and heavy.

REMINDER

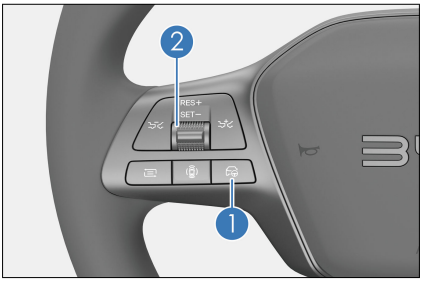
- To ensure driving safety, select the trailer weight accurately. The vehicle will optimize power strategy.

Cruise Control of Towing Mode

- Cruise control can be enabled during towing.

How to Use

- Function activated: After activating towing mode, press cruise button ① to enable cruise control.
- Speed adjusting: After the cruise control function is activated, adjust vehicle speed by toggling the lever ②. Toggle the lever ② up/down to increase/decrease the cruise speed by 2 km/h. Press and hold the lever ② up/down to continuously increase/decrease the speed by 10 km/h.



- To exit the function by:
  - Press the cruise button ① During cruising.
  - Press the brake pedal.
  - Shift the gear into Netural or Park.

Driving Safety Precautions

No Drunk Driving

Even a small amount of alcohol can reduce a driver's ability to respond to traffic condition changes. The higher the level of alcohol, the less responsive the driver will be. Therefore, never drive while under the influence.

No Speeding

Speeding is a major cause of fatal accidents. Faster speeds generally entail higher risk. Therefore, maintain a speed safe for the road traffic conditions.

Keeping the Vehicle Safe for Driving

Tire bursts and mechanical faults are extremely dangerous. To reduce the possibility of such faults, frequently check the vehicle's condition, and regularly complete the specified inspections.

WARNING

- Any driver must possess a driver's license before driving a vehicle.
- Do not drive when fatigued.
- Always follow the traffic regulations when driving a vehicle.
- During driving, please focus on driving, and avoid activity unrelated to driving (such as making / receiving phone calls and adjusting buttons).

Vehicle Use Suggestions

Suggestions for prolong the high-voltage battery life:

- Before the vehicle is stored for a long time, it is recommended to charge the battery fully and discharge it down to 40% - 60% which is not too high or too low, and close the doors and windows.
- Before the vehicle is stored for a long time, it is recommended to fully charge and discharge it once every three months, and then charge it to 40% - 60% for storage.
- During operation of the vehicle, if the SOC indicator bar on the instrument cluster enters the red alert area, it indicates that the battery SOC is low. In this case, charge the vehicle in time and avoid driving with low SOC for a long time.
- During operation of the vehicle, it is recommended to use the on-board charging equipment to fully charge the vehicle once every one to two weeks.
- When the temperature is high, avoid long-term storage of vehicles at full power. It is recommended that the vehicle be discharged to below 95% after it is fully charged.
- When the temperature is very low or very high, it is recommended that the vehicle should not be parked outdoors for a long time.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid repeated rapid acceleration or deceleration whenever possible.
- If a fault indication is displayed on the instrument cluster during driving, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- Keeping the vehicle work for a long time can overheat the battery, and optimal vehicle performance may not occur. In that case, turn off the vehicle and wait until the battery cools down.

WARNING

- In low or high temperature environments, the pure-electric driving range is somewhat reduced compared with the normal temperature and power performance will also be affected.

CAUTION

- If the pure-electric driving range drops to 0 on the instrument cluster, the battery must be charged. If it is not charged within seven days, the battery will suffer permanent damage. Such damage is not covered by BYD warranty terms.

CAUTION

- Driving range depends on many factors, such as the vehicle's available power, vehicle age (current battery life), weather, temperature, road conditions and driving habits.

Fuel

Fuel Selection

- The use of correct fuel is the basis for realizing the best performance of the engine, and also the key to controlling emissions and protecting relevant components.
- Please use unleaded gasoline that meets local standards.

CAUTION

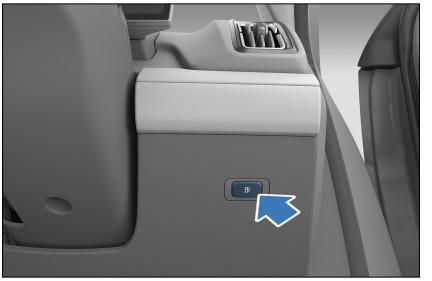
- Do not use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline leads to the failure of the three-way catalytic converter and the malfunction of the control device for exhaust pollution, as well as the increase in maintenance costs.
- The engine damage or excessive emission caused by the use of improper fuel is not covered by the warranty.
- The use of low-grade or inferior gasoline reduces the service life of the engine.

Refueling

- The fuel door is located on the left side of the vehicle, so park the vehicle with its left side close to the fuel pump.
- Turn the vehicle off.

1. Open the fuel door.

- After the vehicle is powered off, press the driver's pressure relief switch, wait for about 1–15 seconds, and press the fuel door to open it after the instrument cluster prompts that the fuel tank cap has been unlocked.



2. Rotate the fuel tank cap counterclockwise to remove it.

- Rotate the fuel tank cap counterclockwise to remove it, and place the fuel tank cap on the bracket of the fuel door. Refuel by inserting the gas nozzle.



3. After refueling, screw up the fuel tank cap clockwise and then close the fuel door.

WARNING

- Since the fuel is flammable and combustible, pay attention to the following matters during refueling:
  - It is recommended to add fuel outdoors.

WARNING

- Do not smoke during fuel filling, so as to prevent sparks or open flames, which are easy to cause combustion.
- Fuel filling and charging must be done separately. Do not refuel the vehicle with the charging connector connected, which should be keep a safe distance away from combustible products, or it may result in risk of damaged equipment or injuries when the operation of plugging/unplugging the charging connector is not done by rule, such as burning fuel.

CAUTION

- Due to different pressures in the fuel tank, the time from the fuel tank pressure relief to the fuel door unlocking will be different, and it is normal to see different waiting time of fuel door unlocking.
- Stop filling after the filler nozzle is automatically cut off. Do not overfill the fuel tank, so as to leave some space for fuel expansion due to the temperature change.
- Check whether the fuel tank cap is tightened and whether the fuel door is closed in time after refueling.
- If the fuel tank cap is not tightened, may lights up on the instrument cluster.
- If the fuel adding is not completed within 15 minutes after the fuel door is opened, please close the door, open it, and add fuel again,

CAUTION

otherwise the reverse spray of oil may occur during refueling.

- If the fuel tank cap is idling and cannot be opened, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Emergency opening of fuel filler cap: Lever the blanking cap off, which is in the center of the fuel tank cap handle. Insert a slender guide rod (such as a gel pen refill) into the small hole till the end and keep, and rotate the handle counterclockwise to take the fuel tank cap off.

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life

- Saving fuel is simple and easy, and it helps prolong the vehicle's service life. Here are some tips for saving fuel and repair costs:
  - Constant speeds save fuel. Sudden acceleration, sharp turns and emergency braking increase consumption.
  - Speeds should be kept constant according to traffic conditions. Each deceleration or acceleration of the vehicle consumes additional fuel.
  - Using cruise control under proper driving conditions for fuel saving.
  - Using the A/C adds extra load to the engine, which increases fuel consumption. Turn off the A/C when it is not needed to help reduce fuel usage. When outside temperatures are moderate, use fresh air mode.
  - Make sure tire pressure is correct. Insufficient tire pressure causes tire wear and fuel waste.

- Do not load unnecessary weight on the vehicle. Excessive weight brings additional load to the engine, resulting in large fuel consumption.
- Do not stop to warm up the engine, and start driving slowly immediately after starting, which can make the engine reach the working temperature as soon as possible and reduce the emission of harmful substances. Unless in extreme low temperature environment, you can keep a high idle speed by lightly stepping on the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is in Neutral under "HEV-SPORT" mode, and then start driving slowly after warming up.
- Cold start: When the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds or hard acceleration immediately after starting. It is recommended to drive gently until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- Avoid long-term idling of the engine. If you are in a low-traffic area and have to wait for a long time, it is better to turn off the engine and start it later.
- Avoid engine deceleration or overspeed with loads. Select the appropriate speed gear according to the road conditions.
- Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Frequent stop and start cause fuel waste.
- Avoid unnecessary parking or braking. Maintain a steady speed and follow traffic lights to minimize the number of stops. When driving on roads without traffic lights, keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead to avoid sudden braking, which also helps reduce brake wear.
- Do not drive on roads with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as possible.
- Do not always put your foot on the brake pedal if unnecessary, this may cause premature wear, overheating, and consumption of a large amount of fuel.
- Keep moderate speeds in motorways. Higher vehicle speed consumes more fuel. Maintaining vehicle speed within the economical speed range can save fuel.
- Keep front wheels properly aligned, Avoid collision with curbstones and drive slowly on rough roads. An inaccurate front wheel alignment causes excessive tire wear and increases the engine load and fuel consumption.
- Keep the bottom of the vehicle clean and mud free. This reduces vehicle weight and prevents corrosion.
- Adjust the vehicle to keep it at its best working status. Such conditions as dirty air filters, much carbon deposit in spark plugs, dirty, deteriorated or viscous engine oil and lubricating oil, and unadjusted brakes worsen the engine performance and waste fuel. Regular maintenance must be carried out to ensure a long service life of all components and reduce operating costs. If the vehicle is often driven under severe conditions, the maintenance interval shall be shortened.

REMINDER

- Do not coast in Neutral gear.

Carrying Luggage

- This vehicle has multiple storage spaces.

- The glove box, door bins, and seatback pockets are designed to store small and light items, while the cargo box is used to store larger and heavier items.
- Overloading or improper accommodation may affect maneuverability, stability and normal operation of the vehicle, and reduce its safety.
- Make sure the vehicle's total load (vehicle + passengers + luggage) remains within the specified maximum weight.
- Please read the following information carefully before carrying luggage.

WARNING

- Overloading and improper accommodation may affect stability and vehicle control, which may lead to accidents.
- Observe the maximum weight limit and other loading guidelines in this manual.
- Do not carry highly magnetic items, as they might interfere in the vehicle's normal operations.

Carrying Items in the Passenger Area

- All items that could be thrown inwards and thus injure occupants in case of a collision must be properly placed and secured.
- Ensure that items placed on the floor behind the front seat do not roll under the seat, so as to avoid affecting the driver's ability to control the pedals or normal seat adjustment. Do not stack items to a height taller than the front seats' seatbacks.
- Make sure the glove box is always closed while driving. If the glove box is open, the occupant's knees may be injured in case of a collision or an emergency stop.

WARNING

- Do not pile up toys in the vehicle, as this may affect driving safety and present a hazard to the children, especially in case of emergency braking or collision.

Loading the Cargo Box

Cargo box anchor points

- Place luggage evenly in the cargo box. Put heavier items at the bottom and as far as possible.
- Secure goods with ropes or straps so that they will not move while driving.



REMINDER

- Ensure that the goods are properly secured before driving.

CAUTION

- For vehicle driving safety, ensure that the length and width of the goods do not exceed the dimensions of the cargo box, and keep the height as low as possible.
- To prevent falling, fix the goods with tarpaulins or ropes.

CAUTION

- Do not use roll cages* and the tailgate to support goods.
- Load the goods evenly to avoid movement and partial overload of the vehicle, or even damage to the cargo box and the frame.
- Before driving, ensure that the cargo is securely fastened to prevent bouncing or movment, which may impact and damage the tailgate.
- Avoid using the tailgate to support heavy loads whenever possible. If this cannot be avoided, follow the precuations below. Failure to do so may result in damage to the tailgate.
  - If the tailgate must be used temporarily to support cargo, ensure that the vehicle is stationary, the tailgate is fully lowered in the horizontal position, and the supported load does not exceed 250 kg.
  - Do not impact the cargo onto the tailgate during loading or unloading.
  - Do not use the tailgate to support cargo for extended periods.
  - Before driving, ensure that the tailgate is fully and securely closed. Never drive the vehicle with the tailgate open.
- Do not put flammable and explosive materials such as petrol containers and spray cans in the cargo box to avoid fires or even personal injuries.

WARNING

- Make sure no one is riding in the cargo box during driving.
- Never throw unextinguished cigarette butts, matches and other fire sources out of the vehicle, otherwise they may be blown into the cargo box by the wind, causing a fire and even personal injuries.

Roof Rack*

- Storing luggage on the roof rack will increase overall energy consumption and change the way the vehicle drives and handles.
- When installing the roof rack, please read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- Try to load the roof rack evenly and keep the center of gravity low. Loads on the roof rack may elevate the overall center of gravity, which might alter your driving experience.
- When driving a heavily loaded vehicle, take extra precautions, such as decelerating and increasing the braking distance.
- The maximum recommended load of the roof rack is: 75 kg in dynamic state, and 300 kg in static state. Among them, the load includes the weight of the beam, luggage frame and other accessories mounted on the rack.

CAUTION

- Luggage must not be put on the roof metal sheet directly. The roof metal sheet is not designed for loading.

CAUTION

- Use the roof rack properly and fasten the luggage on the beam.
- Make sure the luggage is securely fastened on the roof rack before driving and during parking.

Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning

- The engine exhaust contains CO gas. If the vehicle is properly maintained, CO may not enter inside during normal driving.
- Check the exhaust system for leakage under the following conditions:
  - The exhaust sound is abnormal.
  - The vehicle has been subjected to accidents that may damage the bottom of the vehicle.

WARNING

- CO gas is toxic. Inhalation of CO can result in loss of consciousness and even threat to life. Any enclosed environment and activities that can cause CO poisoning should be avoided.
- High-concentration carbon monoxide gas will quickly concentrate in closed areas, such as garages. Do not start the engine when the garage door is closed. Even if the garage door is open, the running time of the engine should be limited to the extent that the vehicle can be driven out of the garage.

Fire Prevention

To prevent vehicle fires in a timely and effective manner, pay attention to the following during use of the vehicle:

- Do not press the accelerator pedal continuously. Otherwise, the engine will always run at a high speed.
- No flammable or explosive items are allowed in the vehicle.
  - Temperatures may reach over 70°C in a vehicle exposed to direct sunlight in summer. Therefore, flammable and explosive items, such as lighters, cleaning agents and perfumes, stored in the vehicle can cause a fire or even explosion easily.
- Make sure cigarettes are thoroughly put out.
  - Smoking is harmful to your health and may cause a fire. Cigarettes that not thoroughly put out may cause a fire.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for regular vehicle checks.
  - Check oil leakage in the engine compartment regularly, and clean up the oil dirt and oil stain on the engine in time.
  - Check vehicle wiring, electrical connections, wiring harnesses, insulation, and fixed positions regularly. Deal with identified problems promptly.
- Do not refit vehicle wiring or add any unauthorized electrical appliance.
  - The addition of extra electrical appliances, such as high-power audio systems, light fixtures, etc., may overload and overheat the wiring harness and increase the risk of fire. Improper refitting of electrical

appliances or wiring may cause a fire due to contact resistance and abnormal heating.

  - Fuses or other replacement wires in excess of relevant electrical rating are strictly prohibited.

- Select a proper parking location.

  - When the vehicle is parked, especially in summer, do check whether there are any flammables such as dry grasses, dead woods, leaves or wheat straws under the vehicle. If any, a fire may be caused as the temperature of the exhaust system components rises after a long-term drive.

  - When the vehicle is running, avoid driving on the road sections piled up with flammables such as dry leaves, wheat straws and grasses, or immediately stop the vehicle to check whether any flammables are carried along after passing such road sections. When parking the vehicle, try to avoid sun exposure.

- Disconnect the negative cable of the low-voltage battery when the vehicle is being serviced or repaired.

- Keep a lightweight fire extinguisher in the vehicle and know how to use it.

  - In order to ensure vehicle safety, a fire extinguisher should be equipped in the vehicle, and be checked and replaced regularly. Also, you should familiarize yourself with use of the fire extinguisher and be prepared for any accidents.

- In the event of a fire in the vehicle, take effective measures in a timely and calm manner to minimize any losses.

  - Fires typically show initial warning signs, such as abnormal noises and odors in the vehicle body. When abnormal conditions are found, turn off and stop the vehicle immediately. Try to put out the fire if possible.

  - Call the fire alarm in time, and also dial the insurance company's reporting number and ask the company to come to the fire site for handling.

- Find out the origin of the fire. In case of any smoke in the engine compartment, do not open the hood immediately (because this aggravates the combustion and spread of the fire due to air ingress. There is limited comburent in the engine compartment, so the hood shall be kept closed to control the flames, which is conducive to firefighting). Point the on-board fire extinguisher at the ignition point from the hood gap to put the fire out, or seek help from the passing cars. If you can borrow more fire extinguishers, open the hood to put it out when you cannot see any flame from outside

- If the fire brigade is involved, ask for a duty performance certificate and a description of fire cause.

- After occurrence of the accident, contact the insurance company for post-event handling in a timely manner.

REMINDER

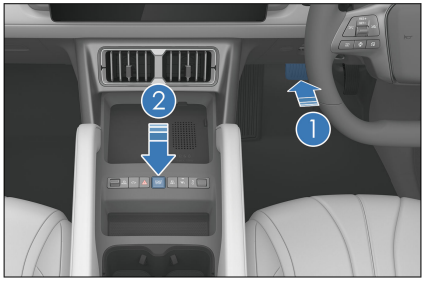
- In order to mitigate losses in the event of an accident, the purchase of fire loss insurance is recommended.

Starting and Driving

Starting the Vehicle

In normal cases, start the vehicle as below:

- Carry a valid smart key with you, depress the brake pedal ① and press the "START/STOP" button ② at the same time, and then the OK indicator on the instrument cluster illuminates, indicating that the vehicle is ready for driving.
- Shift to "D" or "R" position, and then the electrical parking brake will be released automatically. Do not start driving until hearing a motor release sound from the electronic parking brake system.



The vehicle cannot be powered on when:

- The vehicle cannot be powered on when:
  - After you press the "START" button, if the smart key warning light turns on, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected" is displayed on the instrument cluster, the key may not be in the vehicle or cannot be detected due to interference.
  - The key is somewhere unsuitable for detection, such as on the floor, in the cup holder, cargo box, or glove box.
- Pressing the "START" button may not enable the start function due to:
  - If the electronic smart key does not work, the smart key system warning light flashes and the message "Low key battery" is displayed on the instrument cluster, the battery of the key may be exhausted. Replace the electronic smart key battery as soon as possible with reference to ***P258***.
  - The engine is started repeatedly in a short time. Wait for 10 seconds and start the vehicle again.
  - Except for causes mentioned above, the smart access and start system also fails to work normally under some conditions due to different service environments. See ***P60*** for relevant details.

Starting the vehicle in emergencies:

- Engage the parking brake firmly.
- Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
- Shift to "P" or "N".
- The power mode is "OFF".
- The electronic smart key is in the vehicle.
- Press and hold the "START/STOP" button for more than 15 seconds to start the vehicle.

CAUTION

Do not start the vehicle for more than 20 seconds at a time, or the wiring system will overheat.

Remote Start

- Press and hold the remote start/stop button on the electronic smart key to start the vehicle. After it is started, turn signals flash three times.
- If there is no valid operation within 10 minutes after remote start, the vehicle stops and powers off, and turn signals flash twice.
- After the successful start, press and hold the start/stop button on the smart key to shut down the engine and power off the vehicle, and turn signals flash twice.



Driving

- During driving, energy is recovered through regenerative brakes when the vehicle decelerates. For higher efficiency, do not accelerate or decelerate the vehicle unnecessarily.
- The function can be set in relevant setting interface on the infotainment touchscreen. Users can select the corresponding energy regeneration mode according to driving habits.
  - Standard: When the accelerator pedal is released, the motor controller recovers energy in the standard level, and the vehicle deceleration is in the standard level.
  - High: When the accelerator pedal is released, the motor controller recovers more energy, and the vehicle deceleration is high.
- You can select the regeneration intensity based on the deceleration sense when releasing the accelerator pedal. Different deceleration senses deliver different driving experiences.
- The set regenerative braking intensity will be memorized. When the vehicle is powered off and then on, the regenerative braking mode set last time will be maintained.

REMINDER

- Do not set the regeneration intensity when driving at high speed, as you may be distracted, resulting in accidents.

- During driving, if the vehicle is switched from ECO mode to SPORT mode, it will immediately supply more power than before to meet the driver's needs. Please pay attention to driving safety.
- When the vehicle is in the HEV-ECO or HEV-NORMAL mode, according to the high-voltage battery SOC and the vehicle speed, the engine may start and stop frequently, which is a normal economic operation mode.
- In HEV mode, the engine automatically starts and stops as needed to charge the battery or provide additional power. In some conditions, the engine may start, or stop if it has started.
- Vehicle power is lower at low battery SOC than that at high battery SOC.

CAUTION

- The higher the battery charge, the more powerful the battery discharge, and the engine will

CAUTION

operate normally, providing a better acceleration experience.

- Faults of the battery, generator or engine affect power output.

Safety Check Before Driving

It is advisable to carry out a safety check before driving a long distance, which ensures your driving safety and enhances your driving experience. The vehicle can also be taken to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

Exterior

- Tires: Check tire pressure and carefully inspect tires for any cut, damage, foreign material, anomaly, and excessive wear.
- Lug nuts: Check whether nuts are loose or missing.
- Leaks: After the vehicle has been stationary for some time, check for fluid deposits beneath it. These may indicate a leak of fuel, engine oil, coolant or other liquids. (It is, however, normal for a small pool of water to form, caused by the air conditioning system.)
- Lighting: Make sure headlights, position lights, turn signals and all other lights are working normally. Check headlight intensity.

Interior

- Seat belts: Check whether seat belts can be properly fastened. Verify that seat belts are not worn or scratched.
- Instrument cluster: Particularly, verify that maintenance indicator, instrument cluster lighting, and defroster work properly.
- Brake pedal: Verify that there is enough space for the brake pedal to work.
- Low-voltage battery and cables: Check connectors for any corrosion or looseness and any cracks in the low-voltage battery housing.

In the engine compartment

- Spare fuses: Verify that spare fuses of all rated charges in the fuse box are available.
- Coolant level: Verify that coolant level is correct.
- Fuel pipe: Check the pipe for any fuel leakage and loose connections.

Check after starting

- Exhaust system: Listen for leakage. In case any leakage is found, have it repaired immediately.
- Engine oil level: After the engine is warmed up, stop the it for 10 minutes, park the vehicle on a flat ground, and check the oil level.
- Instrument cluster: Confirm that the maintenance indicator and the speedometer work normally.
- Brakes: In a safe area, drive the vehicle straight, hold the steering wheel tightly, decelerate and apply the brake. Verify that the vehicle maintains a straight direction.
- Other abnormalities: Check for loose parts, leaks, and unusual noises.

Preparations Before Driving

- Check the surroundings before getting into the vehicle.
- Adjust seat position, seatback angle, cushion height, headrest height, and the steering wheel angle and height.

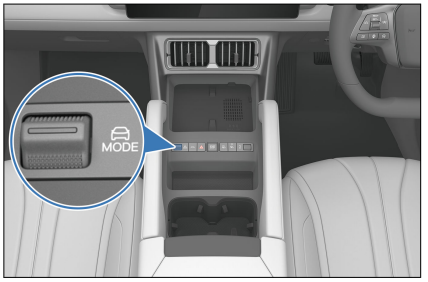
- Adjust the interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- Close all doors.
- Fasten the seat belts.

Kick-Down Function*

- During driving, when the vehicle is going uphill or it is necessary to accelerate rapidly or press the accelerator pedal deeply, almost fully pressing the accelerator pedal increases the pedal resistance and triggers this function, so that the engine speed increases to provide greater power for the vehicle.
- Higher battery SOC can ensure sufficient discharge power of the high-voltage battery, so that the engine can work normally and a better acceleration experience can be obtained.
- Battery fault, generator fault, and engine fault may affect the Kick-Down power output.
- Frequent triggering of the Kick-Down function will cause the battery level of the vehicle to drop rapidly.

Driving Mode

The terrain modes include Snow, Muddy, Sand, and Mountain modes. Using the terrain button.to switch or exit these modes



Snow mode

- Snow mode is recommended for roads with a firm roadbed and a layer of loose and slippery materials such as grass, snow, ice, or gravel. The vehicle improves the four-wheel grip by optimizing its towing, driving, and manipulation features in slippery conditions.

WARNING

- Do not park on very steep slopes.
- On a snow-covered road with a depth of over 100 mm, drive in sand mode.

CAUTION

- The adhesion coefficient of snow-covered roads is low, so drive with caution and slow down for corners.

Muddy mode

- Muddy mode is recommended for roads that are muddy, deeply rutted, soft and uneven, or where the vehicle is prone to skidding and getting stuck. The vehicle optimizes the driving force output and the ESC parameters for better passing through these roads.

WARNING

- Never drive on paved roads in this mode.
- Do not park on very steep slopes.

CAUTION

- Drive at a constant speed and avoid stopping midway in the mud.

CAUTION

- Before driving through a mud pit, get off the vehicle to check the depth of the pit and whether there are any hidden obstacles.
- Be sure to keep a sufficient safe distance from the vehicles ahead because the vehicle braking distance increases when driving on wet or muddy roads.
- When driving on mud, be careful of sudden changes in speed or direction.
- Clean your vehicle after driving through the mud. Otherwise, the excessive mud in the vehicle will lead to vehicle imbalance, causing damage.

Sand mode

- Sand mode is recommended for roads that are soft, dry, or easily pressed by wheels (e.g., sand and deep snow). The vehicle optimizes the driving force and saves battery power for better running on the sand.

WARNING

- Never drive on paved roads in this mode.

CAUTION

- For desert driving, it is recommended to adjust the tire pressure to 120 kpa (1.2 bar).
- In sand mode, the vehicle automatically sets a higher target SOC. Make sure the vehicle is fully charged before driving.
- When parking on a slope, adjust the front of the vehicle to face downhill to reduce the possibility of rollover.
- When driving on sand, keep as many wheels as possible running on the firmest surface.
- After driving over sandy roads, check the braking system and ensure that it is normal. Clean the debris such as sand and dirt at the bottom of the vehicle to prevent vehicle failure.
- After each desert off-road trip, it is recommended to check the following parts in time and maintain the vehicle or send it for repair as needed:
  - Engine oil filter element
  - Air conditioner filter
  - Electric fan
  - Tires
  - Light Switches
  - Brake pedal, brake pad, and brake disc
  - Charge port door and fuel door
  - Air filter element
  - Door hinges
  - Locks, latches, and interior buttons
  - Supercharger pressure end lines and impellers

Mountain Mode

- Mountain mode is recommended for roads with mixed soil and stones or potholes, such as rugged mountain roads, hills, gravel roads, etc. The vehicle improves the off-road

capability by intelligently adjusting the driving force output.

WARNING

- Never drive on paved roads in this mode.
- Drive uphill and downhill in a straight line to prevent lateral skidding and rollover.
- Do not park on very steep slopes.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal too deeply may cause tires to slip, spin, or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.

Off-road Driving Precautions

Inspection items before off-road driving

- Check the engine oil and add sufficient oil if necessary. Ensure that the engine runs steadily on steep slopes.
- Check the tread depth and tire pressure, remove the foreign matter stuck on the tread (such as small stones), and carry the intact spare tire.
- Check whether the chassis, body and electrical appliances are damaged.
- Check that all vehicle lights are working properly.
- Ensure all tools needed are present and in good condition.
- Check the fuel level and battery charge.
- Before starting off-road driving, consult all relevant government agencies to determine where you can legally drive your vehicle and what licenses or registrations are required.
- Improve the off-road driving experience by familiarizing yourself with the vehicle's dimensions, including approach angle, departure angle, longitudinal breakover angle, ground clearance, and vehicle features.
- Fix all articles in the vehicle firmly to prevent danger caused by movement and falling of articles during driving.
- Be familiar with the terrain, area and road conditions. Different road surfaces such as hard soil, gravel, rock, grass, sand, mud, rain, snow and ice have different effects on the steering, control and traction of vehicles.
- Fully investigate the road conditions, formulate driving routes and drive cautiously.
- Ensure that you are in good physical condition and have thoroughly assessed your off-road capabilities before embarking on any off-road activities. Avoid sharp turns and sudden steering at high speeds. Incorrect driving may cause the vehicle to lose control or roll over, causing serious personal injuries or deaths.
- Assess terrain conditions and engage the corresponding off-road mode before entering complex terrain to avoid the vehicle losing control.

Inspection items after off-road driving

Off-road driving impose stricter performance requirements on vehicles than driving on normal road conditions. After off-road driving, inspect the vehicle to promptly identify any damage and reduce the risk of accidents for the driver and other road users.

- Disengage the differential lock.
- Check whether the steering system is abnormal (heavy steering or abnormal noise).
- Clean headlights and tail lights and inspect for damage.
- Clean front and rear license plates.

- Check the horn.
- Check whether there is oil leakage or liquid leakage at the bottom of the vehicle.
- Clean wheels, tires, wheelhouses, and underbody and inspect for any foreign material and damage.
- Check the air filter and relevant pipelines for water and sand ingress.
- Check for loose threaded fasteners.
- Check the exhaust system for trapped plant twigs or other flammable materials, as these items can increase the risk of a fire.
- Ensure that the area around the air intake and the front grille are clean and free of residual dirt. Pay special attention to the lower grille and radiator components. Neglect of this may cause the engine to overheat, resulting in serious engine damage.
- After driving through sandy, muddy, or bushy areas, inspect the front compartment for mud, sand, and any bush branches. Check for sand and mud accumulation around the brake system, as this can affect braking performance and damage brake components. After cleaning the vehicle, promptly wash and thoroughly inspect it. If any abnormalities are found, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The following precautions must be observed when driving off-road to minimize personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
  - In a rollover accident, the risk of death is higher for people who are unbuckled than for those who are buckled up. Make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened when driving,
  - During off-road driving, it is recommended to wear walkie-talkies and other communication equipment.
  - Ensure that you are in good physical condition and have thoroughly assessed your off-road capabilities before embarking on any off-road activities.
  - Avoid sharp turns and sudden steering at high speeds. Incorrect driving may cause the vehicle to lose control or roll over, causing serious personal injuries or deaths.
  - When there is a strong crosswind, slow down and reduce the speed to better control the vehicle.
  - Avoid high speeds, abrupt maneuvers, sharp turns, or collisions with obstacles when driving in the field or on rough roads. These actions may cause the vehicle to lose control, roll over, or result in severe damage or injuries.
  - When driving off-road, maintain extreme caution and avoid driving in hazardous areas.
  - Do not hold the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. Severe jolts may cause your hands to jerk against the steering wheel, resulting in injuries to hands. Place your hands, especially your thumbs, on the outer edge of the steering

WARNING

wheel and try to hold the steering wheel with both hands.

- Do not enter areas where traffic is prohibited.
- In unfamiliar areas, drive at low speed to be aware of any obstacles you may encounter.
- If the low oil pressure warning light comes on while the vehicle is in motion, stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Check the engine oil level and do not ignore the warning from the low oil pressure warning light. Continuing to drive in this condition may result in engine damage.
- Off-road driving increases the likelihood of vehicle damage, which may result in assembly or system failure. The driving style should be adjusted according to the terrain conditions.
- Incorrect use of driving modes can cause the vehicle to respond incorrectly to road conditions, reducing the life of the suspension and drivetrain.

CAUTION

- Before switching to the off-road mode, it is necessary to ensure that the seat belt is buckled. If the seat belt is not fastened, the alarm* of the infotainment touchscreen will be triggered.
- The braking effect must be checked immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow terrains. Do not enter the sand road after driving in the mud, so as to avoid damaging the

CAUTION

transmission or brake after getting wet in the mud.

Wading Protection

Wading protection function

- Wading protection is suitable for waterlogged roads. The vehicle may start the engine forcibly, or maintain exhaust back pressure of the engine to improve the possibility of passing through the wading area and safety of the vehicle.

How to Use

- Enable this function in ⚙ → **Drive** → **Wading Protection** when the ignition is on.

CAUTION

- Ensure the SOC is above 20% before use, and pay close attention to the remaining battery of the vehicle.
- Make sure all doors are properly closed before use.
- Do not wade in water whose depth exceeds the vehicle's maximum wading capacity (700mm).
- The maximum wading capacity refers to the depth at which the vehicle slowly passes through the still water. A lower value should be considered in flowing water.
- Discharging function is disabled when wading protection is enabled. After crossing over the wading area and turning off the wading protection function, you can re-plug the power plug or power off and on the vehicle to

CAUTION

restore the internal and external discharge functions.

- After crossing over, it is recommended to gently press the brake pedal several times to clean and dry out the brake disc, so as to recover brake performance.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for checks after wading.

WARNING

- It is not recommended to wade into water unless necessary.
- Enable wading protection function before the vehicle enters the wading area. Do not exit this function or power off and on in wading area.
- Do not wade in water whose depth exceeds the vehicle's maximum wading capacity. Any fault or damage to engine and other vehicle parts so caused is not covered by the vehicle's warranty.
- Do not drive or stop in the deep water area for a long time.
- Avoid driving in turbulent water. Always drive slowly with a speed below 10 km/h, and do not accelerate or rush into the wading area.
- Before wading, the driver needs to confirm the wading area conditions. Do not attempt to wade if the water depth cannot be confirmed. Taking a detour is recommended.

WARNING

- The wading protection function is only an auxiliary driving function for wading areas. It cannot be used for daily driving. It cannot monitor the actual water conditions around the vehicle and the water velocity, or predict whether the water depth around the vehicle is rising rapidly, and cannot identify current vehicle waterproofness, nor can it predict whether it is safe to continue driving.
- As wading protection is only an auxiliary driving function, it cannot replace the driver's judgment for the outside. The driver should beware of the surroundings and drive with caution. In all situations, the driver is responsible for driving safety.
- Before wading, the driver should assess whether the function using conditions are met. Pay attention to surroundings to identify potential hazards when using this function to wade, so as to avoid vehicle damage and personal injury.
- The wading protection function cannot ensure driving safety in complex driving conditions such as flood, deep water, river and rainstorm.
- Avoid wading into deep water areas, as driving beyond the maximum wading capacity may cause vehicle damage or even personal injury.
- During wading with wading protection function, if it is found that water enters the engine intake pipe or the engine fails,

WARNING

do not switch driving modes or power off and on the vehicle, otherwise it may be damaged.

Vehicle inspection and servicing

1. After the vehicle has waded across the water, it is recommended to carry out the following checks immediately:
   - Check whether there is abnormal water ingress.
   - Check whether there are abnormal instrument warnings.
   - Check horn sound.
   - Check front combination lights, rear combination lights and turn signals.
   - Check the brake disc for abnormal sound.
   - If the vehicle is still in water, keep the engine idling to prevent water from entering the exhaust pipe. Do not turn off the engine immediately after exiting the water, so that the engine temperature could increase to evaporate some moisture from the exhaust system and engine compartment.
   - After getting off the vehicle, inspect the bottom of the vehicle immediately for entangled debris such as weeds, branches, or plastic bags. Clear in time to prevent affecting heat dissipation or component damage.
   - Drive slowly while gently applying the brakes at a safe place after exiting the water. This process generates heat through the friction between the brake pads and brake discs, which could evaporate the moisture on the components and restoring braking performance. It is normal that the brake pedal may feel soft at first, and the braking distance may be longer. Press the brake pedal several times to restore the braking performance.
2. It is recommended to carry out the following maintenance items on the day of water crossing:
   - Clean the vehicle:
     - Rinse off mud, sand, and debris to avoid corrosion of the chassis parts and frame.
     - Thoroughly clean the vehicle body, especially the gaps, to prevent corrosive substances in river from corroding the body.
     - Ensure the engine has cooled down before cleaning the front compartment. Do not directly spray the engine's parts and fuse box with a high-pressure water jet. Clean with a damp cloth and dry with an air gun
   - Check the intake system:
     - Check the air filter and engine intake pipes for water accumulation. If water is present,, do not start the engine. Contact a towing service, and perform a thorough inspection and maintenance.
   - Check the fluids for the following issues and replace them if any are present:
     - Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to have qualified technicians remove the drain plugs to inspect the engine oil, transmission oil, differential gear oil, and other fluids for signs of emulsification.
     - Check the brake fluid to determine if it is cloudy.
   - Check the engine system:

- Check the engine cylinder head cover and ignition coil area for water accumulation. If water is present, do not start the engine and clean it immediately.

3. If the water depth exceeds the engine exhaust pipe or air intake, contact BYD authorized dealer or service provider for following professional inspections, even if no issues are found during self-inspection.
   - Replace the fluids:
     - Even if the oils appear normaI, it is recommended to replace the engine oil, transmission oil, differential gear oil, and transfer case oil after deep water crossing. Water mixing may greatly decrease lubricating effect, causing part wear.
   - Check and lubricate the chassis system:
     - Check all chassis bushings and ball joints. Dirt and sand may cause accelerated wear and aging.
     - Check and grease U-joints of the tie rod, ball joint, and drive shaft.
   - Check and prevent corrosion in the electrical system:
     - Check all electrical connectors and wiring harnesses (particularly the sensor connectors on the chassis) for moisture and oxidation. If found, dry the area and apply anti-corrosion treatment.
     - Check all fuse boxes and relays to ensure dryness and prevent short circuits.
   - Check the interior:
     - If water enters the driver's compartment, remove all carpets and floor mats immediately, clean thoroughly, and dry completely to avoid mold and corrosion of the vehicle floor.
   - Check the drain holes:
     - Check the drain holes in the door panels, chassis, and sunroof tracks for mud blockage.
   - Check the instrument cluster for any warnings:
     - Check the instrument cluster for engine system faults. If any, BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately for repairs.

Driving with Low Fuel Consumption

Fuel consumption and driving range are related to many factors. Taking some corresponding measures, such as good driving style and regular maintenance, cannot only improve the driving range and reduce fuel consumption, but also be conducive to environmental protection.

- Drive in "ECO" mode as much as possible
- Keep the vehicle in good condition
  - Carry out maintenance: Regular maintenance of the vehicle ensures a longer service life and the best economy.
  - Check the tire pressure regularly: Check the tire pressure at least twice a month, check the tire pressure before long-distance driving, and calibrate the tire pressure if necessary (Excessively low tire pressure increases rolling resistance, resulting in greater power and fuel consumption and tire wear).
- Drive at the speed in "ECO" mode as much as possible.

- Drive at the speed in "ECO" mode can effectively improve driving range and reduce fuel consumption. Whether the speed is too high or too low, it consumes more fuel. On the premise of ensuring safety, try to keep your vehicle running at the speed in "ECO" mode.

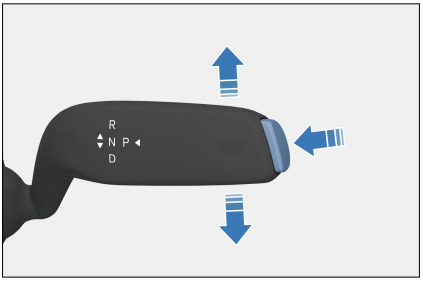
- Predictive driving
  - On the premise of ensuring driving safety:
  - Avoid unnecessary rapid acceleration and braking;
  - Always keep a proper distance from the vehicle ahead on:
  - When the traffic light turns red, release the accelerator pedal to allow the vehicle to skid with inertia;
  - Keep a constant speed.
- Use the energy recovery system rationally
  - On the premise of ensuring safety, select the appropriate braking intensity under different road conditions to match the driving state of the vehicle. To make full use of the energy recovery system, step on the brake as lightly as possible to slow down and avoid sudden deceleration.
- Reduce unnecessary items in the vehicle
  - Additional weight increases energy consumption.
- Proper use of A/C system
  - Heating and cooling are energy-consuming, which will significantly reduce the driving range and increase fuel consumption. Reasonable use of A/C system can effectively reduce power and fuel consumption.
- Turn off functions that are temporarily not needed
  - Interior heating consumes a large amount of electrical energy (e.g. seat heating*) and should be switched off when not required.

REMINDER

- During the break-in period, do not drive under heavy load, and the vehicle speed shall not exceed its maximum speed.
- It is recommended to press the accelerator pedal lightly for acceleration to reduce damage to the vehicle caused by hard press.

Gear Shift Controls

- The gear position of the gear shift controls is marked on the gear shift lever, as shown in the figure.
- After starting the vehicle, press the brake pedal and push the gear shift lever up or down to shift between gears.



- Park ("P")
  - Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete stop and press the "P" button to shift into Park.
- Drive ("D")

- When the vehicle is in Park, press the brake pedal and move the lever down one position or two positions to shift into Drive.

- Reverse ("R")
  - When the vehicle is in Park, press the brake pedal and move the lever up two positions to shift into Reverse.
- Neutral ("N")
  - When the vehicle is in Park, press the brake pedal, move the lever up one position, and hold briefly to shift into Neutral.
  - When the vehicle is in Drive, and the speed is below 10 km/h, move the lever up one position and hold briefly to shift into Neutral.
  - When the vehicle is in Drive, and the speed is below 10 km/h, move the lever down one position and hold briefly to shift into Neutral.

WARNING

- Avoid downhill driving when the vehicle is in Neutral, as it may damage the transmission and affect driving safety.
- To prevent accidents, avoid depressing the accelerator pedal while shifting a gear. When the accelerator pedal is pressed, you cannot shift to Drive or Reverse.
- Never shift to Reverse or press the "P" button while the vehicle is moving, so as to prevent accidents.

CAUTION

- After shifting gears, always check on the instrument cluster. If the gear displayed does not match the one you selected, shift again.

CAUTION

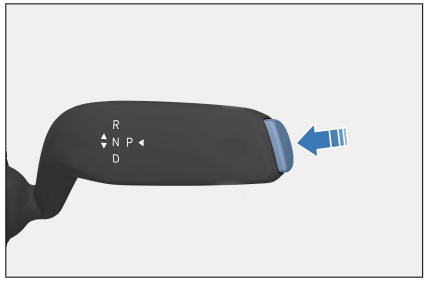
- While reversing, be aware of the surroundings around the vehicle to avoid accidents.
- Make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park before getting off.

REMINDER

- Move the lever and then release it. It will automatically return to the middle position.
- If the vehicle speed prohibits shifting or the brake pedal is not depressed when moving the lever, the instrument cluster will show a message, and the gear will not change.
- You can shift to Drive and Reverse when OK indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.

The P Parking Switch

Press this button to park the vehicle and the button lights up with the vehicle shifted into "P".



Electricity generation in "P"
When the vehicle SOC is low, press the "P" button and shift into Park, and the engine drives the generator to charge the high-voltage battery. During electricity generation, the engine speed

is different from the normal idle speed, and it automatically exits after generating a certain amount of electricity. If high-power generation or more electricity is needed, step on the accelerator pedal and stop after generating more electricity.

- Activating conditions for electricity generation in "P":
  - The high-voltage battery SOC is very low.
  - The high-voltage battery temperature is moderate.
  - The powertrain has no limitations or fault prompts.
- Deactivating conditions for electricity generation in "P":
  - A certain amount of electricity is generated.
  - The high-voltage battery temperature is very high or very low.
  - The powertrain has limitations or fault prompts.
  - The engine or clutch fails.

Shutting the engine down in "P"

When the vehicle SOC is high, the engine is automatically shut down after "P" is engaged, and the power consumption of electric equipment is supplied by the high-voltage battery, which can reduce fuel consumption and noise in the vehicle in idle condition.

- Activating conditions for shutting the engine down in "P":
  - The high-voltage battery SOC is high.
  - The high-voltage battery temperature is moderate.
  - The powertrain has no limitations or fault prompts.
- Deactivating conditions for shutting the engine down in "P":
  - The high-voltage battery temperature is very high or very low.
  - The high-voltage battery is low.
  - The outside temperature is very low, and there is a need for heating or defrosting.
  - The powertrain has limitations or fault prompts.

WARNING

- If the engine or motor is shut down, do not allow the vehicle to move after it has been shifted to "N", to avoid accidents due to insufficient braking force.
- When the engine or motor is running and the vehicle is in the "R"/"D" gear, be sure to stop the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal, as the actuator can still transmit force and the vehicle can travel slowly even in its idle condition.
- If you want to shift a gear while driving forward, do not step on the accelerator pedal to prevent accidents.
- In order to prevent accidents, never shift to "R" or press the "P" button while the vehicle is moving.
- Never coast downhill in "N", especially if the engine or motor is not running.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

Be sure to engage the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) every time before parking and leaving the vehicle.

Engaging EPB Manually

- When the vehicle is not in Park and EPB is released, press the brake pedal and engage electronic parking brake (EPB) on shortcut menu in the infotainment touchscreen. Then, EPB applies appropriate parking force, and the indicator on the instrument cluster flashes and then is steady on, indicating that EPB is engaged. In addition, a text prompt "EPB activated" is displayed.

CAUTION

- When Ⓟ flashes, EPB is working. If the vehicle is on a slope, do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ is steady on. Otherwise the vehicle may move down.

Engaging EPB Automatically

Switching the ignition off

- When the ignition is switched off, EPB engages automatically and Ⓟ lights up on the instrument cluster.

Shifting into Park

- Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle steadily and shift into Park. EPB is engaged automatically. Do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.
- Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete stop. If the driver's door is opened while the gear is in Drive or Reverse, the vehicle will be automatically shifted to Park and the EPB will be engaged. Do not release the brake pedal until the indicator Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.

WARNING

- Refrain from excessively utilizing the automatic EPB engagement triggered by opening the driver's door, as it may result in the EPB not engaging properly or insufficient clamping force, leading to rollaway risks. For safety, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

CAUTION

- Do not release the brake pedal early in the process, especially when the vehicle is stopped on a slope; otherwise the vehicle may slip back.
- Engaging EPB automatically with the ignition off is designed to improve the vehicle safety. Excessive reliance or frequent use of the function may lead to low SOC of low-voltage battery, resulting in the risk of vehicle slipping due to insufficient EPB clamping force. For safety, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle Start

Releasing by shifting gear:

- With the vehicle parked, start the vehicle, press and hold the brake pedal, and shift from "P" or "N" into a driving gear such as "D" or "R". EPB is released automatically, the indicator goes off, and the "EPB released" message is displayed.

CAUTION

- Be sure to always press and hold the brake pedal when shifting gears. Release the pedal only after the intended gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- The EPB system conducts power-up self-check within several seconds after the vehicle is started. In this process, the system does not respond to any function.

Releasing by pressing the accelerator pedal:

- When the vehicle has been started and the gear is in a driving gear such as "D" or "R", engage EPB on the infotainment touchscreen, then simply press the accelerator pedal slowly to a certain degree. EPB is released automatically and (P) turns off with the message "EPB released" displayed.

Emergency Braking When Brake Pedal Fails

- When the vehicle is in motion and ESC system works normally, controlled deceleration for parking (CDP) can be used for emergency braking if braking fails or is blocked.
  - Press the "P" button for over two seconds to force the vehicle to brake. Pressing the brake pedal simultaneously allows the vehicle to decelerate faster.
  - You can release the "P" button to stop braking.
  - After the vehicle stops, EPB remains engaged and must be released again before you can start the vehicle.

CAUTION

- When CDP is activated, if the accelerator pedal is pressed more deeply, CDP will exit and the vehicle will keep running.

WARNING

- For safety considerations, refrain from using the "P" button for emergency braking in normal driving. If the brake pedal fails or is blocked, use the emergency braking function while you can always keep the vehicle under control and drive normally.
- As the EPB cannot go beyond the physical limit of road adhesion, activating the emergency brake function may result in vehicle drift, sideslip, or deflection when the vehicle passes through bends or dangerous/heavy-traffic road sections, or when the vehicle is driven under severe weather conditions. Be careful to avoid any accident.

EPB Trailer Mode

The EPB trailer mode is designed for the situation when EPB is automatically engaged with the ignition off. When the vehicle needs to be powered off for towing, or when it malfunctions, you can switch on the trailer mode to exit parking with EPB. If EPB cannot be released, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **Drive** → **Overhaul** → to enable **EPB Trailer Mode**.
- EPB trailer mode activation conditions (all must be met):
  - The vehicle is in Park.

- Press the brake pedal.
- The charging connector is not connected, and the vehicle is not being charged.

CAUTION

- When the activating conditions of EPB trailer mode are not met, a corresponding prompt message displays on the infotainment touchscreen.
- After activating the EPB trailer mode, the corresponding screen always displays on the infotainment touchscreen unless you tap to exit the EPB trailer mode.
- When the vehicle is on a slope and you need to enable the EPB trailer mode, do not release the brake pedal during the process to avoid vehicle slipping.

- EPB trailer mode exiting conditions (one of them is enough):
  - Disable the EPB trailer mode on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - Press the "P" button.
  - Charging starts after the charging connector is connected.

EPB System Indicator

- When the vehicle is powered on, if the EPB is engaged, (Ⓟ) is solid on on the instrument cluster.
- When the vehicle is powered off, if the EPB is engaged, (Ⓟ) on the instrument cluster turns on and then turns off in several seconds.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the EPB system starts self-check. (ⓘ) turns on and then off in several seconds on the instrument cluster. If it does not, the EPB or braking system may be faulty. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection immediately.

EPB Operating Sound

- EPB motor noises can be heard while the EPB is being engaged or released.
- If there is a burning smell or unusual noises after emergency braking is activated, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

- To prevent skidding, shift to "P" and make sure the EPB is on before leaving the vehicle.
- To prevent a serious accident, never allow any passenger in the vehicle to operate the EPB switch when the vehicle is running.
- When the EPB switch is pulled or released, the brake pedal must be pressed to prevent the vehicle from moving, and the subsequent locking of the gearshift that occurs because EPB cannot provide a sufficient parking force.

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)

The automatic vehicle hold (AVH) is activated automatically when the moving vehicle needs to be stationary for longer periods of time, such as in traffic jams on a slope or waiting at traffic lights.

AVH standby

- When the ignition is on, enable AVH by the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control**, then AVH

standby indicator Ⓐ lights up on the instrument cluster.

- Press the AVH switch again to disable AVH.

AVH activated

- When the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ is solid on, press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero) to activate AVH. At this time, the vehicle is in AVH state with Ⓐ displayed on the instrument cluster.

CAUTION

- For AVH to be activated, all of the follow conditions must be met:
  - The driver's seat belt is fastened and the doors are closed.
  - Intelligent power braking system and electronic park brake (EPB) systems are normal.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal, shifting into Park, powering off the vehicle or engaging the EPB manually can make AVH exit to the standby status.
- AVH has a memory function that retains its previous state when the vehicle is restarted.

AVH running

- The AVH runs normally when it is activated, brake lights and the high-mount brake light are on, and the AVH indicator Ⓐ is solid on on the instrument cluster.
- The AVH function exits to the standby mode after the vehicle stops for 10 minutes, with the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ lighting up and gear shifted into Park.
- To activate AVH function, shift into Drive to enable the vehicle to move normally, and then press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero).

AVH exits

- When AVH runs normally, the following actions deactivate AVH and engage EPB:
  - Opening the driver's door.
  - Unlocking the driver's seat belt.
  - Stopping the vehicle in Drive with EPB activated.
  - Pressing the AVH switch to disable AVH when releasing the brake pedal.

WARNING

- Opening the driver's door engages EPB and shifts the vehicle into Park.
- Under the above operating conditions (excluding opening the driver's door), the gear shifts to Park automatically only after the EPB is fully applied (indicator steadily on). If the accelerator pedal is pressed while the EPB is being applied (indicator flashing), the gear does not change and will not shift to Park.

AVH suppressed

- Shift into Reverse and then AVH enters the slow-moving condition. When the vehicle is reversing (in Reverse) or shifts from Reverse into Drive to travel at a low speed, AVH cannot be activated but stays on standby to facilitate low-speed vehicle motion.
- To exit slow-moving mode, press the AVH switch or drive at a speed above 10 km/h. The AVH function is on standby and can be activated normally.

CAUTION

- Do not activate AVH if the vehicle is to be transported, for example, on a trailer, ship, or train. Instead, shift into Park, engage EPB, then turn off the vehicle and lock it to prevent vehicle movement caused by insufficient braking force against vibrations during transportation.

Key Points for Driving

- Slow down when driving against strong winds to control the vehicle.
- When driving on gravel roads, drive slowly and keep the correct angle as far as possible. To prevent tire damage, do not drive over sharp-edged objects or other road obstacles. Or it will severely damage the tires.
- Slow down on bumpy or uneven roads. Otherwise, the impact may seriously damage wheels.
- Washing the vehicle or driving through deep water may wet the brake. For checking wet brakes, ensure that the surroundings are safe and then press the brake pedal gently. If the braking force is not normal, the brake may be wet and needs to be dried. Drive carefully and press the brake pedal gently while engaging the EPB.
- If the wheels are trapped, it is recommended to switch to sand mode for getting out. However, the vehicle may not be able to get out of trouble if the vehicle battery is low, all wheels are slipping, the EV function is limited, or the ESC system malfunctions.

WARNING

- The driver shall ensure the riding safety of all passengers in the vehicle, guide them to correctly use vehicle features, and prevent children and other passengers operating control switches such as window switches in a wrong way.
- Make sure no occupant sticks their head or hands outside the vehicle, specially when it comes to children.
- Be careful when accelerating or braking on slippery roads. Quick acceleration or sudden braking will cause the vehicle to skid or deviate.
- Do not leave the vehicle when the drive motor is running.

CAUTION

- Do not press and hold the START/STOP button for over three seconds while driving, as this will cut off the power output and activate the emergency power-off. Therefore, unless it is absolutely necessary (such as failure to park the vehicle properly), do not stop the vehicle in this way, so as to avoid vehicle collisions or serious personal injuries.
  - If the emergency power-off function is activated, the vehicle will switch from "OK" mode to "ON" mode, lose power, and be unable to drive normally. Activate the hazard warning lights in this situation.
  - Emergency power-off during driving will not cause the steering system and brake

CAUTION

system to be out of control, but the steering wheel and brake will lose power assistance. At this time, it is more laborious to turn the steering wheel and press the brake pedal. Therefore, before the emergency power-off, the vehicle should be slowed down as much as possible, or parked on the roadside as far as possible on the premise of ensuring safety.

- Before driving, make sure that EPB is fully released and that the EPB indicator light is off.
- Under normal driving conditions, do not press the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time, otherwise the power output may be limited.
- If there is no need to brake, do not put your foot on the brake pedal for a long time to avoid system overheating, wear and power waste.
- Slow down when driving down long steep slopes, and avoid pressing the brake pedal too frequently to prevent disc overheating, which affects normal brake operations.
- Avoid driving through flooded areas as much as possible on wet roads.
- Large amounts of water entering the engine compartment can cause damage to the engine power system and electrical components.

Winter Driving Precautions

- Make sure the coolant is freeze-proof.
  - Use coolant of the same type as the one used originally. Fill up proper coolant into the cooling system based on the ambient temperature.
  - Improper coolant will damage the cooling system.
- Check batteries and cable conditions.
  - The low-voltage battery's capacity is lower in cold weather, so they must be fully charged for startup in winter.
- Confirm that the viscosity of the oil is suitable for winter driving.
- Avoid the door lock being frozen by ice and snow.
  - Spray some deicing agent or glycerin in the lock hole to prevent freezing.
- Use anti-freeze washer fluid.
  - These can be found in BYD authorized dealers or service providers and all auto parts stores.
  - The water and anti-freeze ratio must conform to manufacturer instructions.

CAUTION

- Use special washer fluid to prevent paint damage.

- Prevent ice and snow from going under the fender.
  - Steering is difficult with ice or snow accumulating under the fenders. When driving in cold weather, stop from time to time and check for snow and ice under the fenders.
- It is recommended to carry emergency tools or items for different road conditions.
  - It is advisable to have snow chains, window scrapers, bags of sand and salt, flashing signals, a shovel and connecting cables in the vehicle.

Winter Tires

- Winter tires provide better traction on snowy roads. The special rubber tread pattern makes the tires less affected by low temperatures and delivers excellent braking performance to improve driving safety.

Usage tips

- It is recommended to use winter tires in snow or ice conditions or at temperatures below 7°C. When temperatures rise to above 7°C, install summer or all-season tires instead for driving safety and better performance.
- Winter tires must be the same size, load index, and speed rating as those originally provided by BYD.
- Winter tires must have adequate tread depth. Tires with a tread depth less than 4 mm do not perform well in winter conditions.
- Winter or summer tires are designed for specific acceleration conditions. Use them in the corresponding seasons to avoid poor traction or braking performance.
- Do not exceed the speed rating of winter tires, which is relatively low.
- After installing winter tires, inflate them to the design pressures.

Snow Chain Instructions

- Snow chains are only for emergencies or areas where they are permitted by laws.
- Snow chains should be installed on rear wheels, and the front wheels should not be equipped with snow chains. Be careful when driving the vehicle installed with snow chains on snow-covered roads. Use thin snow chains. Some snow chains may damage tires, wheels, and the vehicle body. The recommended snow chains are no larger than 10 mm in thickness, which provides enough space between tires and other parts in the hubcap.
- Read the component assembly drawings and other instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer carefully.
- Before purchasing and installing snow chains, consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider where your vehicle was purchased.
- In order to minimize wear of tires and snow chains, do not travel with snow chains on roads without snow.

CAUTION

- After snow chains were installed, it is recommended that the driving speed must not exceed 30 km/h and the speed limit specified by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Drive carefully, paying attention to bumps, potholes, and sharp turns that can cause the vehicle to bounce.
- For vehicles with snow chains, avoid sharp turns or braking with locked wheels, and slow down the vehicle before entering a curve to avoid accidents.
- Install the chains symmetrically on the left and right sides and remove them immediately after driving out of snowy roads.
- If the snow chain gives an abnormal sound, please stop the vehicle immediately to check whether the suspension, body or brake, brake line and other parts are normal, and make sure there is no interference with the snow chain.

CAUTION

- When installing the snow chain, park the vehicle on a flat surface away from traffic, turn on the hazard warning lights, and place a warning triangle at the rear of the vehicle.
- Before installing snow chains, switch off the engine and engage the parking brake. Do not install snow chains with insufficient tire pressure.
- When using tire chains, be careful not to damage the aluminum rims.

Driver Assistance

Driver Assistance System

- The functions of driving assistance system are divided into two categories: driving assist, safety assist.
  - Driving assist: It includes two functions with varying levels of intelligence: Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and intelligent cruise control (ICC), designed to assist the driver in driving.
  - Safety assist: It includes front, side, and rear safety assistance to support the driver in safe driving.

WARNING

- Before using the driving assistance system, the driver is required to carefully read, understand, and comply with the relevant agreements and technical documents. Learn and master the essential knowledge of using the system, including but not limited to: the user guide, general system limitations and functions' descriptions, scope of application, methods of use and precautions. During system use, strict compliance with the operating instructions is required to ensure safe and effective operation. BYD assumes no liability for property damage, personal injury, or other consequences caused by the driver's non-compliance with this manual, related agreements and documents, unless otherwise mandated by law.
- The driving assistance system is designed to assist the driver, not to replace their focused attention and accurate judgment. When using the system, the driver must comply with local traffic laws and regulations, always hold the steering wheel, keep alert and monitor the surrounding environment for potential hazards. Intervene or take control timely when necessary to ensure safe driving. Otherwise, it may result in accidents, property damage, or personal injury.
- The terms and expressions related to vehicle control in this manual are designed to clearly and concisely communicate key points during system usage to drivers. During system operation, the driver remains the sole operator of the vehicle. It is required to continuously monitor the vehicle, system status, and external environment and respond as necessary. In the event of system limitations or unexpected

WARNING

scenarios, immediate manual intervention and control are mandatory to ensure driving safety. Otherwise, it may lead to accidents, even property damage and personal injury.

- Drivers shall comply with local laws and regulations to legally use the functions of the driving assistance system, and shall not add functions, Apps, or tools to the system for any improper or illegal acts, nor shall they illegally collect and use personal information and geographic information data. BYD shall not bear any responsibility for any illegal activities resulting from the user's misuse, improper use, or unauthorized modification of the system functions or services. BYD reserves the right to temporarily disable system functions or even terminate services provided to the user. Additionally, BYD reserves the right to retain data related to the user's illegal activities for use as evidence by authorized agencies with legal procedures.

CAUTION

- The driver assistance system is only designed to assist the driver in driving, not an automatic or unmanned driving system. The driving assistance system is designed to assist the driver, not to replace their focused attention and accurate judgment. Although the system can provide a certain level of assistance, it cannot fully address all scenarios that may arise due to traffic, road conditions, visibility, adverse

CAUTION

weather, or other environmental changes during driving. Therefore, the driver is solely responsible for all driving decisions and must ensure compliance with local traffic laws at all times.

Sensors of the Driver Assistance System

The vehicle is equipped with sensors such as MmWave radars and cameras.

Sensor cleaning and maintenance

- Ensure that all radars and cameras are clean and the windshield is clean and free from frost or fog. Dirt, obstructions, or attachments on the radar or camera surface, or dirt, frost, or fog on the windshield may affect the system working. Do not install any accessories near the above components, such as license plate frames, bumper stickers, protective covers, or films.
- When a radar or camera is blocked or dirty, the instrument or infotainment touchscreen may display a message prompt. Clean and maintain accordingly. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider when necessary.
- Common radar or camera occlusion or dirty scenes and corresponding treatment suggestions:
  - If the radar or camera lens housing is covered with ice or frost, it is recommended to melt it using warm water or a antifreeze-containing cleaning solution. After melting, wipe the surface dry with a clean optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.
  - If the radar or camera lens housing surface is adhered with dust,

mud spots (including muddy water stains), bird droppings, or other contaminants, it is recommended to rinse with running water or windshield-specific cleaning solution until the dirt and adhered contaminants soften or detach. Afterward, wipe the surface clean with a dry optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.

- If the radar or camera lens housing surface has moisture or condensation, it is recommended to wipe it clean with a dry optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible water stains remain.
- When driving in environments with poor lighting or obstructions, such as single-sided overpasses, tunnels, deserts, grasslands, or snowy areas, it is recommended to drive the vehicle away from the current environment so as to resolve the sensoring faults due to obstructions, with no further actions required.

- Cleaning and maintenance tips:
  - When the windshield fogs up or there is a risk of fogging, it is recommended to turn on the windshield defrosting function to prevent fogging or frosting on the windshield.
  - Using a neutral cleaning agent (e.g., soap water) to clean stains on the radar surface is recommended. After cleaning, rinse the radar housing surface with clean water first, and then wipe it dry with a clean lint-free cloth.
  - Do not apply films, wax, non-OEM paint, vehicle wraps, or coatings to the radar housing area, as these actions may impair radar sensing performance.
  - Do not use a cleaning brush to clean the radar or camera, as sand or debris mixed into the brush may cause scratches on the lens housing and casing.
  - Do not use hot water to remove ice or snow from the lens housing, as it may cause the lens housing to crack.
  - Do not wipe the radar cover forcefully to avoid damaging the optical coating of the lens housing.
  - Do not use metal or other hard objects to scrape the contaminants or ice and snow on the surface of the lens housing and casing to avoid damage.
  - Avoid spraying directly on the radars and cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water.
  - The mmWave radars are installed in the front and rear bumpers. To avoid affecting radar performance, keep the bumpers clean. Do not paint, add body kits, or install metal or alloy (including electroplated) decorative parts on the bumpers, as this may impair radar functionality.

Sensor Limitations

- Limitations of radar and camera include but are not limited to:
  - Radars and cameras may have detection blind spots when perceiving the surrounding environment.
  - Radars and cameras may detect falsely such as incorrectly identifying the distance or speed of objects, or detecting objects when none are present.
  - Radar and camera sensors may miss a target, such as partially identifying or failing to detect

vehicles, pedestrians, animals, or other obstacles. M

- Many factors can affect sensor performance, leading to false detection or missed detection. Carefully read the limitations of the driver assistance system.

WARNING

- It is strictly prohibited to use strong alkali, strong acid, ammonia-containing cleaning solvent, bleaching agent, cement cleaner, asphalt cleaning agent, glue remover, polishing agent or paint remover to clean radar and camera lens housings and casings.
- Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider if a radar or camera needs to be replaced. Do not install or use parts not approved by BYD or make modifications not approved by BYD.
- If the windshield or bumper needs to be replaced, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to ensure proper disposal of radars and cameras.
- If the area where a sensor (radar or camera) is installed is damaged or collided with, causing the sensors to become misaligned or damaged, the system may fail to work. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to check.
- After a radar or camera is replaced, calibrate in time according to this manual. An unsuccessful calibration may affect the proper operation of the system.
- Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety,

WARNING

resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

General Limitations of the Driver Assistance System

Driver assistance features employee multi-sensor fusion algorithm. Various factors can impair their performance. These include but are not limited to device issues (including incorrect operations), environment of use (such as weather and road conditions), and influence of vehicles around and other road users. In specific:

device issues (including operator-related reasons)

- The mmWave radars or cameras are not yet calibrated or damaged or covered, for example, by ice, water, frost, mud, or dust.
- There are strongly reflective objects around, such as highway traffic signs, metal railings, and water reflection on the road.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checkup of the system in any of the following situations:
  - The front camera or front windshield has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
  - Scrapes, collisions, or other impacts have led to sensor or vehicle structural error, especially sensor displacement due to deformation or damage of the bumper, front windshield, or frame.
- Trailer hitches or loaded objects protrude from the vehicle.

- Interference or obstruction is caused by bike rack or other non-standard accessories installed at the rear of the vehicle.
- Obstructions is caused by excessive paint (paint thickness changes) applied or adhesive products (such as tape, stickers, and car covers) attached.
- Cases where system performance may be reduced include but are not limited to:
  - The brake pads are excessively worn or the braking system malfunctions.
  - Tires are improperly inflated or worn out.
  - Unqualified tires are installed.
  - Snow chains are installed.
  - A small spare tire or tire repair kit is used.
  - The vehicle is heavily loaded.

Environment of use

- Radars may have a transient failure from detection limitations if the vehicle runs in circular ramps or tunnels or under other special conditions for an extended period. The function will be recovered after the vehicle is away from such conditions.
- Entering or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection, causing the vehicle to brake late or fail to decelerate as expected.
- On roads with sharp curves (winding roads, for example) or too curvy roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of sensor detection for seconds, so ACC may accelerate.
- The system may not be able to correctly identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, motorcycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires constant attention on the surroundings.
- The system cannot be activated in tow, snow, mud, sand, terrain, and other special driving modes*.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, carriage, pedestrian, motorized bicycle or motorcycle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
- The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, fog, and smog, or on a icy and slippery curve.
- Visibility is poor due to heavy smoke, splashing water, dust, or exhaust emissions from nearby vehicles.
- Lane lines are excessively worn, blocked, or covered, have disappeared, are overlapping old ones, have been adjusted in road constructions or change rapidly.
- The vehicle is in intense light (for example, oncoming headlights or direct sunlight) or low-light conditions (for example, dawn, dusk, and nighttime).
- The vehicle experiences extreme lighting contrast, for example, at the tunnel entrance or exit.
- The environment is in extremely hot or cold.
- Weight or width limit signs not in standard size as per national regulations may be mistaken for speed limit signs.
- If a speed limit sign is unclear or distorted, inclined, reflective, partly

blocked or covered, the camera may be unable to recognize the sign completely or clearly.

- The vehicle is in complex road conditions, such as steep slopes, sharp curves, continuous curves, narrow winding roads, narrow lanes, off-road roads, rough roads, roads with grooves or potholes (e.g., manholes), roads with a drop-off or cliff on one side, raised road shoulders, excessively wide lanes, construction zones (e.g., areas with traffic cones), or areas involving on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll gates.
- The vehicle is in poor road conditions, such as slippery or soft surfaces (such as water accumulation, ice, snow accumulation, muddy roads, gravel roads, or sandy roads), blurred lane markings, or damaged road signs.

Vehicles around and other road users

- Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
- Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
- Close-proximity non-motorized vehicles (including but not limited to two-wheelers, three-wheelers, bicycles, motorcycles, trolleys, strollers, and shopping carts), animals, and pedestrians (especially children)
- Upturned vehicles, vehicles in extremely abnormal sizes, and vehicles with irregular shapes, such as flatbed trucks, engineering vehicles, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo
- Irregularly shaped strange obstacles nearby, such as transparent stools, chairs, tables, water barriers, and traffic cones, which are difficult for the system to identify
- Vehicles with large areas of monotonous background colors
- Complex traffic where vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists, animals, or other obstacles appear suddenly and approach rapidly, or areas involving ramps, intersections, or toll stations.

WARNING

- If the sensors are displaced or damaged after scrapes or collisions (including minor impacts), do not use driver assistance features. Instead, contact an authorized BYD service center for inspection and servicing.
- For safety considerations, do not use driver assistance features in bad weather or in poor lighting conditions.
- For safety considerations, do not deliberately test driver assistance features, for example, by waiting for system reaction to emergencies without manual intervention.
- Read carefully all instructions to avoid feature deactivation or danger incurred by incorrect operations. For example, the acceleration request overrides emergency braking if the accelerator paddle is depressed with AEB on.
- Because of its limitations, the driver assistance system may give improper warnings or intervention while monitoring the surroundings. It may also raise false alarms as a result of operation misinterpretation. Stay alert.

WARNING

- Because the system cannot accurately detect and react to emergency in the surroundings, you must be always ready to intervene or take control of the vehicle (by deceleration, braking, steering or so) whenever necessary. Failure to observe precautions above could result in an accident or personal injuries.

Driving Assist

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

- The adaptive cruise control (ACC) system, an extension of the traditional cruise control, uses front mmWave radars or a multi-purpose camera to detect the relative distance and speed of the vehicle ahead, so as to control vehicle speed accordingly based on the set following distance and target cruise speed. When there are no vehicles ahead, the vehicle maintains the set target cruise speed. If a vehicle is detected ahead, ACC adjusts the vehicle speed according to the set following distance.

CAUTION

- ACC is enabled by default and cannot be manually disabled. The driver can activate ACC using the buttons on the steering wheel. See "ACC Activation Methods" for details.
- ACC only serves to assist in cruise control. The driver must remain actively engaged with steering to ensure correct vehicle direction.

ACC status

- ACC on: If the conditions for ACC activation are met, the driver can activate ACC using the steering wheel button. If the conditions are not met and the driver attempts to activate ACC, the instrument cluster will display a "Function Unavailable" message.
- ACC activated: The system maintains the set target cruise speed or automatically adjusts the distance to the vehicle ahead. Pressing the accelerator pedal temporarily overrides ACC control, which will resume once the pedal is released.
- ACC failure: ACC is not available. If the driver attempts activation, the instrument cluster will display a "Function Unavailable" message.

Function Status	Indicator	Display Status	Definition
ACC on		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on but not activated yet in the current power cycle.
ACC on		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on, can be activated, and had already been activated in the current power cycle. The last set cruise speed is displayed in the indicator icon.
ACC activated		Indicator on	ACC is active. The set cruise speed is displayed in the indicator icon.
ACC failure		Indicator on	ACC is not available because it cannot be activated or is faulty.

Activation conditions

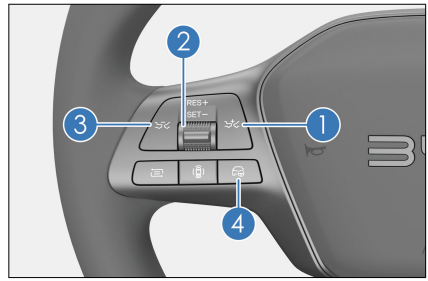
- EPB is not engaged.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle is stationary without rolling backwards.
- All doors, hood, and tailgate are closed.
- The driver seat belt is fastened.
- The electronic stability control (ESC) system is activated.
- The vehicle speed is not greater than 150 km/h.
- If the vehicle is stationary and the brake pedal is pressed or AEB is engaged, ACC can be activated.
- The brake pedal is not being pressed while the vehicle is in motion.
- There is no vehicle network communication failure prompt on the instrument cluster.
- The automatic emergency braking (AEB) function is not activated.

CAUTION

- ACC is suitable for highways and well-maintained roads, rather than complex urban or mountain roads.

Activation methods

- During the current power cycle, the first activation of ACC can only be done using button ④.
- If ACC has been activated in a current power cycle, pushing rocker switch ② up can also activate ACC.



- Press button ④ to activate the feature, and the system will set the current speed as the target cruise speed. If it is

below 30 km/h, the target cruise speed is set to 30 km/h. If is activated by pushing up button ②, the target cruise speed is set to the speed before last deactivation.

WARNING

- ACC cannot automatically adjust speed based on road or traffic conditions. To ensure safe driving, the driver must set and adjust the target speed according to local regulations and road conditions.

Setting the target cruise speed

- When ACC is active, set the vehicle to a speed between 30 km/h and 150 km/h by moving button ② up or down. Moving the button ② briefly upward or downward increases or decreases the target cruise speed by 5 km/h each time, whereas holding it upward or downward increases or decreases the speed by 1 km/h continuously.

WARNING

- The ACC may not be able to immediately reduce the speed to the desired value. Do not over-rely on ACC to reduce the speed.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Setting following distance

- Press ① and ③ to increase and decrease the time-based following distance. Across all levels, the faster the vehicle, the greater the distance.
- ACC increases or decreases the time-based following distance from level 1 to 4. The default level is 3.

Cruise control

- When no front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain the set speed.

Following

- When a front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain a safe distance to follow and speed up, slow down, brake, and start the vehicle accordingly.
- On the instrument cluster, the followed vehicle ahead is highlighted in blue. The following distance is fixed but varies with vehicle speed and the chosen following distance level. (See "Setting the time-based following distance".)
- When active, ACC helps adjust the following speed and target when the target cuts out or another vehicle cuts in and switches to cruise control (without distance control) if no new following target appears.

Follow-to-stop/start

- Under normal driving conditions, ACC enables the vehicle to follow the vehicle ahead to start or stop:
  - If the vehicle ahead stops for a short time, ACC resumes following automatically when the lead vehicle starts moving.
  - If the vehicle ahead stops for a long time, depress the accelerator pedal or move ② upward to start the vehicle.
  - If the stop is excessively long, ACC exits and EPB is engaged. In that case, you will have to release EPB and depress the brake pedal to reactivate ACC.

ACC acceleration

- The acceleration rate of the ACC is linked to the selected driving mode.
  - In Sport mode, acceleration is faster.
  - In Normal mode, acceleration is moderate.
  - In Eco mode, acceleration is gentle.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ACC is unable to deal with oncoming traffic.
- ACC may not identify very close vehicles or pedestrian.
- On curves, the vehicle may follow a wrong target, leading to unintended traveling speed or direction. You must stay focused and take control of the vehicle in a timely manner whenever noticing such situations.
- To prevent collisions, never be over-reliant on ACC adjustment of speed and following distance to keep a safe distance from the front vehicle. The driver is responsible for determining and maintaining a safe following distance.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in

WARNING

an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Adjusting speed with ACC active

- Enable or disable this function in the infotainment touchscreen→ ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Adjust Cruise Speed by Accelerator** and the function is off by default.
- You can accelerate manually by pressing the accelerator pedal, which overrides ACC braking.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal increases current speed rapidly, and releasing the pedal raises the target cruise speed.
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed until the real-time vehicle speed exceeds the target cruise speed, the target cruise speed will be reset to the real-time speed when the pedal is released.
  - If the target cruise speed is greater than 80 km/h, the setting value of cruise speed will not be updated when the accelerator pedal is released.
  - If the target cruise speed is below 80 km/h and the real-time speed is over 80 km/h after acceleration, the cruise speed is set to 80km/h when the accelerator pedal is released.
  - If the target cruise speed is below 80 km/h and the real-time speed after acceleration is less than 80 km/h, the real-time speed is set as the cruise speed when the accelerator pedal is released.
- If ② is pulled down while accelerating, the current speed will be set as the target cruise speed.

Exiting ACC

- When ICC is disabled on the infotainment touchscreen, ACC can be deactivated by pressing button ④ or the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving. When the vehicle is stationary, ACC can only be deactivated by pressing button ④.
- When ICC is enabled on the infotainment touchscreen, ACC can be deactivated by pressing the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving.

Speed adjustment on curve (also applicable to ICC)

- This feature works only with ACC active.
- To enable or disable the function, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Speed Adjustment on Curve**. The function is disable by default.
- With this feature switched on and ACC active, the vehicle decelerates as appropriate for the curvature before entering a curve for driving safety and comfort.

System limitations

- Exterior ACC sensors
  - The front mmWave radars and cameras are installed at the front of the vehicle. Blockage of their detection area can compromise system performance. In particular, if the sensor is covered completely, ACC exits and notify the driver via the instrument cluster. System function will recover after blockage is removed and the vehicle is restarted or runs on normal roads for a while.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The front mmWave radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.
  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Metal objects, such as rail or metal plates used in road construction, may interfere with front mmWave radars, causing it malfunction.
  - Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
  - Performance of front mmWave radars and cameras may be affected by vibration or collision. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Entering or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection, causing the ACC vehicle to brake late or fail to brake as expected.
- On sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of sensor detection for seconds, causing the system to accelerate the vehicle unexpectedly.

⚠ WARNING

- ACC cannot deal with sharp, consecutive, and other complex curves, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.

- Traffic flow and surroundings must be heeded for setting and adjusting the following distance. Even when ACC is properly set, the driver must be able to stop the vehicle at any time.
- The ACC system may not be able to correctly identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, motorcycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires constant attention on the surroundings.
- The ACC system is capable of limited braking instead of emergency braking.

WARNING

- ACC is not a collision warning or avoidance system and therefore cannot replace collision prevention warning, collision prevention brake, or other active safety assist features, which we strongly advise you to keep switched on.
- ACC cannot react to poles, bollards, and other obstacles, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- Never be over-reliant on ACC for full deceleration and collision prevention. You need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- The vehicle may not be able to avoid front targets that pose a collision risk, especially when the target is stationary or when the vehicle is traveling at a high speed.

WARNING

- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

- ACC cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as towing/ snow/mud/sand/mountain mode.
- ACC and its related features may operate improperly or deactivate in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Vehicle issues (including but not limited to improper operations):
    - The vehicle speed is greater than 155 km/h.
    - Any door, the hood, or the tailgate is open or faulty.
    - Tire pressure is abnormal.
    - Airbags are abnormal.
    - The vehicle is in any of the following states: not in Drive, in the process of braking, hill descent control/hill hold control/ traction control system activated, involved in a collision, ignition off.
    - The vehicle's chassis, braking system, traction control system, or electronic stability system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.
    - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.

- The driver assistance system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.

- Environment of use (including but not limited to weather, visibility, road conditions):
  - Low visibility settings such as nighttime, rainy, snowy, or foggy days, dusty environments, lack of lighting, low-light conditions, backlighting, and glare
  - Road openings, intersections, narrow roads, and steep slopes
  - Mountain roads and rural roads
  - Waterlogged, icy, and snow-covered sections
  - Sharp curves, serpentine curves, switchback roads, and other high-curvature turns
  - Unpaved roads such as muddy roads, gravel roads, and off-road trails
  - Curbs and other low-profile, static, or nearby obstacles
- Vehicles around and other road users (including but not limited to):
  - The vehicle is at a congested intersection.
  - Pedestrians and vehicles weave through the intersection.
  - Pedestrians, cyclists, or animals from blind spots appear suddenly.
  - The vehicle ahead brake suddenly.
  - Adjacent large vehicle merges into your lane.
  - Pedestrians or other vehicles cut in, force their way through traffic, merge at a sharp angle, or travel in the wrong direction.
  - There are stationary vehicles, upturned vehicles, or irregularly shaped vehicles, such as engineering vehicles, flatbed trucks, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo.
  - Front vehicle or adjacent front vehicle opens any door or things fall off.
- Other issues
  - Other issues include but are not limited to: situations listed under General System Limitations.

WARNING

- ACC is only a driver assistance feature, and cautions here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety and must always mind surrounding traffic.
- Use ACC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- ACC cannot be activated with ESC off.
- ACC is suitable for highways and well-maintained roads, rather than complex urban or mountain roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to keep distance from the vehicle ahead. Set a time-based following distance compliant with the minimum requirement for the local driving environment.

CAUTION

- Pressing the accelerator or brake pedal while ACC is active allows you to take over the vehicle. Therefore, take caution to keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
- ACC may have no or a delayed response to a vehicle ahead that brakes suddenly, which may result in late braking.
- In some cases, such as when the preceding vehicle is moving too slowly, when you change lanes too quickly, or when the following distance is too short, the system may not have sufficient time to reduce the speed or issue warnings. In such cases, the driver must respond appropriately and promptly.
- When active with the vehicle motionless, ACC identifies any stationary obstacle ahead as the target and keeps the vehicle still to ensure a safe startup and prevent collision. However, this function cannot detect all obstacles, so the driver must be alert.
- If a vehicle in an adjacent lane is too close to your lane, the ACC system, when activated, may respond and apply the brakes.
- Vehicles coming into the ACC vehicle's lane and entering the detection range of the front cameras are identified as target vehicles, which may lead to hard or late braking.
- Keep control of the vehicle if ACC cannot target the vehicle ahead (no highlighted target on the instrument cluster).

CAUTION

- When coming to a stop behind a vehicle, in rare cases the system may fail to recognize the rear end of the preceding vehicle (for example, the rear axle of a high-chassis truck or a rear bumper). In such cases, the system may not maintain a proper following distance, so the driver must stay alert and be ready to brake.
- Modifying the vehicle structure, such as lowering the chassis, may affect the ACC system.
- Do not use ACC when visibility is poor, or when driving on slopes, winding roads, or wet roads (covered in ice/snow or flooded).
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the front cameras in any of the following situations:
  - The front camera or front windshield has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or the instrument cluster has prompted a system error.

Intelligent Cruise Control

- Intelligent cruise control (ICC) assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the current lane at speeds between 0 and 130 km/h. It is primarily intended for use on roads with clear lane markings and in good driving conditions. When using ICC, the driver must control the driving route, keep

both hands on the steering wheel, and be ready to take manual control whenever necessary.

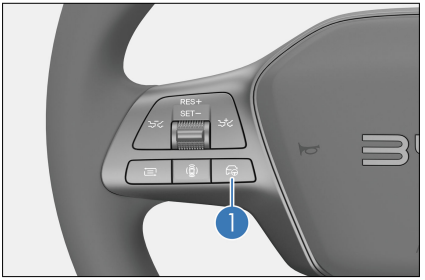
- ICC uses sensors such as radars and cameras to monitor the road ahead. Based on the detected environment, it assists the driver in controlling the steering and speed, building upon ACC functionality to keep the vehicle in its current lane.
- ICC only assists in keeping the vehicle within the current lane; it does not provide route guidance. When using ICC, you must be prepared to take immediate corrective actions to ensure safe driving. Always keep both hands on the steering wheel, take control when route adjustments are required, and pay attention to instrument cluster and audio alerts. If the driver's hands remain off the steering wheel for a certain time, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.

ICC indicators

Indicator	Display Status	Definition
	Indicator on	ICC available but not activated
	Indicator on	ICC activated and operating
	Indicator on	ICC unavailable due to fault

Activating ICC

- ICC is available for activation when  displays on the instrument cluster.
  - Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist**. When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- Press button ① to activate ICC. If the activation conditions are not met (for example, no lane markings are detected), ACC will be activated first. Once the conditions are met, ICC will switch on automatically.



-  displays on the instrument cluster when ICC is successfully activated. The target speed will be shown in .

Cruise control

- ICC assists the driver in keeping the vehicle centered in the lane, while supporting all ACC functions such as constant-speed cruise, following, and the adjustment of target speed and time-based following distance.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ICC cannot detect all potential hazards, so the driver must stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary. Always keep both hands on the steering wheel and remain aware of the surroundings, ready to take prompt control of the vehicle and take corrective measures.
- Do not over-rely on ICC to keep the vehicle in the lane. In situations such as curves, the vehicle may drift towards or across lane markings. The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct lane position.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary.

Driver disengagement alert

- If the driver's hands remain off the steering wheel for a certain time when ICC is active, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.
- After the third-level alert is triggered, ICC will automatically deactivate.

Exiting ICC

- Press the button ① or brake pedal to exit if the vehicle is not stationary.
- Press the button ① to exit if the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING

- The vehicle may not stabilize immediately upon ICC activation. The driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel, stay aware of driving conditions, and be ready to take control at any time.
- Ensure surrounding conditions are safe before activating ICC. Avoid over-reliance on the system.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary.
- ICC can be affected by weather conditions, lighting, and lane marking visibility. Performance degrades significantly in backlight, glare, strong light, on snow-covered roads or roads with heavily worn lane markings.
- Do not use the ICC on winding roads, icy or slippery curves, or under poor weather conditions such as dense fog, heavy rain, or snow, which may obstruct the forward camera's view.
- ICC cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as towing, snow, mud, sand, or mountain mode.

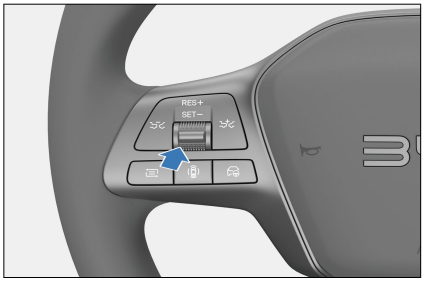
CAUTION

- Activate ICC only after the vehicle is stable (steering wheel centered, vehicle aligned and centered in lane, and no sharp turns).
- ICC activation may fail at intersections. Try activating ICC after passing the intersection and entering a stable lane.

Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)

Function overview

- When the Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) system detects that the speed limit is inconsistent with the ACC target cruise speed, you are required to confirm whether to cruise at the speed limit. When the user presses the SET- or RES + button, the target cruise speed will be adjusted to the speed limit value.



- The system's operating speed range is 30–150 km/h.

Function settings

- ISLC setting: infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
  - ISLC is disabled by default.
  - When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
  - When TSR is disabled, ISLC also ceases to function.
  - With TSR on, ISLC can be enabled or disabled depending on your needs.

⚠ CAUTION

- ISLC integrates ACC and TSR. Therefore, ACC and TSR precautions apply.

Front Safety Assist

Front Collision Warning (FCW)

- Forward Collision Warning (FCW) uses the front mmWave radar and the camera to detect vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists ahead. When detecting a risk of collision, the system alerts the driver audibly and visually to take measures and avoid the collision risk.

Function overview

- Safe distance warning:
  - At 65-150 km/h, the system monitors the environment ahead in real-time. The safe distance warning is triggered if a short following distance is detected to have been kept for a long time.
  - The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, and a message is displayed to alert the driver.
- Pre-warning:
  - At 15-150 km/h, pre-warning is given in response to a risk of collision with the target ahead. In that case, immediately take appropriate actions to ensure a safe following distance.
  - The system gives a pre-warning visually and audibly. The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, the buzzer alarms, and a textual prompt is displayed to suggest the driver braking.
- Emergency warning:
  - If the vehicle runs at about 15-150 km/h, if the driver does not respond appropriately after the pre-warning and the collision risk increases, the system issues an emergency warning. In that case, immediately take appropriate actions to ensure a safe following distance.

- This emergency warning is given in the form of an indicator and a textual braking prompt on the instrument cluster, a beep, and a brief braking reminder.

WARNING

- FCW is an assistance feature and its warning timing may be affected by many factors, including vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, target type, distance to the target, and system latency. As a result, warnings may be delayed, missed, or triggered falsely. FCW can not replace your judgment and operation.

Function settings

- You can set the FCW function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The settings are defined as follows:
  - OFF: FCW is disabled.
  - Late: FCW is enabled and issues a late warning.
  - Moderate: FCW is enabled and issues a moderate warning.
  - Early: FCW is enabled and issues a early warning.

REMINDER

- The default setting is moderate.

System limitations

- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the your path
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes
  - Animals
  - Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles
- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - The vehicle is operating in poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - The vehicle is operating in poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - Sensors are dirty, hazy, damaged, or blocked.
  - The front hood or tailgate is not properly closed or is opened while driving.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened or it is unfastened when the vehicle is in motion.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
  - ESC is disabled or the ESC fault indicator is on.
  - Vehicle modifications (such as thick repainting, films, tape, or decorative items) impair camera or mmWave radar performance.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.

- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.

- In complex traffic situations, FCW may not be able to respond correctly to the following situations, including but not limited to:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected due to special clothing or occlusion.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- FCW may trigger unnecessary warning for water stains on the ground, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates, or road signs.
- The front mmWave radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.

WARNING

- Always drive safely and remain alert to surrounding traffic. FCW is not a substitute for normal braking in any event.
- If FCW gives an alarm, the driver must brake or steer as appropriate.
- If the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead for too long, a safety distance warning will be given. If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, a collision may be unavoidable.
- As the pedestrian protection function is limited by certain physical conditions, you must take timely and effective control of the vehicle under dangerous conditions. FCW may not issue warnings due to limitations in certain pedestrian protection scenarios.
- The system cannot completely protect pedestrians or avoid accidents.
- The pedestrian protection function may occasionally trigger unnecessary warnings in complex situations such as curves.
- System failure, which may be caused by misalignment of the front mmWave radars or cameras, may trigger wrong warnings.
- Do not try to test FCW with carton, iron plate, dummy and other objects. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.

WARNING

- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the mmWave radars and cameras in any of the following situations:
  - The mmWave radar or front camera has been removed.
  - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use FCW based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- FCW cannot issue warnings under all circumstances. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians, and cyclists.
- When the radar or front camera is contaminated or covered, a message will appear on the instrument cluster. In this case, clean the sensor surface as instructed, as contamination or obstruction may cause sensor blindness. When the sensor is dirty or covered by foreign matter, the FCW is disabled. After clearing, it resumes normal operation.

Automatic emergency braking (AEB)

- The automatic emergency braking (AEB) system uses the front mmWave radar or the camera to detect vehicles, pedestrians, and cyclists ahead. The system is triggered to help avoid collision or reduce the impact if possible serious collisions are detected.
- At about 4-150 km/h, the AEB system monitors the road ahead in real time and automatically applies braking if a collision risk with a vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclists is detected.
- During emergency braking, the instrument cluster displays a braking indicator and a prompt message "Emergency braking", and an audible alarm is triggered simultaneously.

WARNING

- AEB is a driver assistance feature not designed to prevent collisions but rather to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking efficiency, and tire status. It may also be mistakenly triggered by misidentification. AEB can not replace the driver's judgement and operation.

Function settings

- Enable or disable AEB on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

WARNING

- Disabling AEB is strongly discouraged, because this would prevent system assistance in reducing vehicle speed and avoiding/mitigating collisions.

REMINDER

- AEB is enabled by factory default.

System limitations

- AEB is only activated when the speed exceeds 4 km/h. This feature is designed to reduce the risk of collision but does not guarantee collision avoidance under all circumstances. Always drive with caution.
- Targets that may not be responded to include, but are not limited to:
  - Oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the vehicle's path
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes
  - Animals
  - Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles
- AEB may be affected or inoperative under the following conditions, including but not limited to:
  - The vehicle is operating in poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - The vehicle is operating in poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - The road conditions are poor due to pits, bumps, slippery surfaces, or steep slopes.
  - Sensors are dirty, hazy, damaged, or blocked.
  - The front hood or tailgate is not properly closed or is opened while driving.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
  - ESC is disabled or the ESC fault indicator is on.
  - Vehicle modifications (such as thick repainting, films, tape, decorative items) impair camera or mmWave radar performance.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- AEB may be unable to properly respond to complex traffic, including but not limited to the following circumstances:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able

to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.

  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- System performance may be reduced in some cases, including but not limited to the following:
  - The front bumper is strongly impacted from accidents or other causes.
  - The brake pads are excessively worn or the braking system malfunctions.
  - Tires are improperly inflated or worn out.
  - Unqualified tires are installed.
  - Snow chains are installed.
  - A small spare tire or tire repair kit is used.
  - The vehicle is heavily loaded.
  - The vehicle is in the break-in period.
- AEB may trigger unnecessary brakes for puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- The front mmWave radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.
- AEB cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as towing, snow, mud, sand, or terrain mode.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, AEB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- Always drive safely and remain alert to surrounding traffic. AEB is not a substitute for normal braking in any event.
- As the pedestrian protection function is limited by certain physical conditions, you must take timely and effective control of the vehicle under dangerous conditions. AEB may not brake due to limitations in certain pedestrian protection scenarios.
- The system cannot completely protect pedestrians or avoid accidents.
- The pedestrian protection function may occasionally trigger unnecessary braking in complex situations such as curves.
- System failure, which may be caused by misalignment of the front mmWave radars or cameras, may trigger unnecessary braking.
- Do not attempt to test AEB with cartons, metal plates, dummies, or other objects, as the system may not function properly and thus causing accidents.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the mmWave radars in case of any of the following situations:
  - The mmWave radar or front camera has been removed.

WARNING

- Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
- The vehicle has experienced a collision.
- ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.

- Use AEB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- During an emergency warning, the system will not activate AEB if the driver has already taken evasive action, such as steering, accelerating, or braking firmly.
- AEB cannot guarantee a braking in all cases. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- When the radar or front camera is contaminated or covered, a message will appear on the instrument cluster. In this case, clean the sensor surface as instructed, as contamination or obstruction may cause sensor blindness. When the sensor is dirty or covered, AEB is disabled. After clearing, it resumes normal operation.

Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)

- At around 10–20 km/h, the front cross traffic alert (FCTA) system continuously monitor the environment ahead through sensors such as mmWave radars or cameras on both sides of the front bumper. If a potential collision with a crossing vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected, the system issues a warning to alert the driver.
- During a warning event, the system alerts the driver through an audible beep from the buzzer, radar-side rendering on the instrument cluster, flashing of the instrument cluster indicators and front-row ambient lights*, and flashing warning lights on the side mirrors.

Function settings

- Enable or disable FCTA on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

REMINDER

- This function is disabled by factory default.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System limitations

- FCTA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
  - Function disabled
  - The vehicle is not in Drive.
  - The front hood, door, or tailgate is not properly closed or is opened while driving.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.

- Sharp or rapid turn of the steering wheel
- The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
- The driver press and release the brake pedal.
- System initialization is in progress.
- The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.

- In the following situations (including but not limited to the scenarios listed below), the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as front obstructions, obstacle type, or appearance timing, which may result in no warning, a false warning, or a delayed warning.
  - When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the system may issue warnings as appropriate.
  - The mmWave radars on both side of the front bumper are blocked by dirt, snow, or other obstructions.
  - Detection may be affected by noise or electromagnetic interference, leading to delays or malfunction.
  - The vehicle coming from the side suddenly changes the lane.
  - The target vehicle is obscured.
  - The radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
  - The vehicle operations in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow.
  - MmWave radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the mmWave radars can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary warning may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.

WARNING

- FCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use FCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- FCTA warnings may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Front Cross Traffic Braking (FCTB)

- When the vehicle is traveling below 20 km/h, the front cross traffic braking (FCTB) system continuously monitor the environment ahead through sensors such as mmWave radars or cameras on both sides of the front bumper. If a potential collision with a crossing vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected, the system applies automatic braking to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating the collision.
- During braking, the instrument cluster issues warnings via text and visual prompts, rendered according to the radar detection side.

WARNING

- FCTB serves as a driver assistance function only, which helps the driver avoid or reduce the impact of collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking efficiency, and tire status. It may also be mistakenly triggered by misidentification.
- Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards.

Function settings

- Enable or disable FCTB on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

REMINDER

- FCTB is active only when both reminder and braking are enabled.
- This function is enabled as delivered from the factory.

System limitations

- FCTB is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- FCTB may not operate or disengage during a braking in certain conditions, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
  - The function is set to "OFF" or "Warning only".
  - The vehicle is not in Drive.
  - The front hood or tailgate is not properly closed or is opened while driving.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
  - Sharp or rapid turn of the steering wheel
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The driver press and release the brake pedal.
  - System initialization is in progress.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.

- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.

- In the following situations (including but not limited to the scenarios listed below), the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as front obstructions, obstacle type, or appearance timing, which may result in no braking, a false braking, or a delayed braking.
  - When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the system may not brake as appropriate.
  - The mmWave radars on both side of the front bumper are blocked by dirt, snow, or other obstructions.
  - Detection may be affected by noise or electromagnetic interference, leading to delays or malfunction.
  - The vehicle coming from the side suddenly changes the lane.
  - The target vehicle is obscured.
  - The radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
  - The vehicle operations in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow.
  - MmWave radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - The vehicle is heavily loaded.
  - Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the mmWave radars can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, FCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- FCTB is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTB to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use FCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- FCTB may be delayed, missed, or triggered unnecessarily due to system limitations.

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)

- The traffic sign recognition (TSR) system detects speed limit signs using cameras and illuminates the speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster to maintain an appropriate speed.

Function overview

- TSR contains: speed limit information function (SLIF) and intelligent speed assistance (ISA).
- Speed limit information function (SLIF): detects speed limit information using cameras and illuminates the speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster.
- ISA: alerts against speeding with a speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster or a audible alarm, when the vehicle speed exceeds the detected limit.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- When TSR is off, neither TSR or any related feature is enabled.
- When TSR is on, SLIF and ISA can be switched on or off according to needs.
- Audible alert for speed limit change: enables/disables audible alerts when the speed limit changes are detected.
- ISA: enables/disables visual and/or audible alerts when the vehicle speed exceeds the detected speed limit.
- Speed limit warning (SLW): The audible alert for when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit can be enabled/disabled via the dropdown interface on the Home Screen.

REMINDER

- TSR only identifies speed limit signs, not any other traffic signs, and does not help control the vehicle. Drive responsibly.

REMINDER

- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If it does not, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- If TSR malfunctions and becomes unavailable, have the system repaired immediately.

System limitations

- As a driver assistance system, TSR may not respond to all traffic, weather, visibility, road conditions.
- Speed limit sign detection is sensitive to the environment. Situations that may lead to TSR failure or performance degradation include but are not limited to:
  - The front windshield is dirty or fogged, or the front cameras are blocked.
  - The light changes suddenly, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - The speed limit signs are unclear, distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked, or covered.
  - Visibility is poor due to snow, rain, or fog.
  - Weight or width limit signs are not in standard size as per national regulations.
- The system operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the field of view of the front camera, dyed or incorrectly coated windshield, reflective objects placed on the dashboard, or any other interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- TSR cannot assist in speed control. Do not be over-reliant on it.
- TSR is only an assistance feature, and cautions here include only common situations affecting the TSR function. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Speed limit signs are unclear.
  - Speed limit signs are incomplete.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the front cameras or late function activation include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle is operating in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, or smog.
- TSR may not work, work improperly, or deactivate itself when:
  - System start up during vehicle power-on or reboot
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.

CAUTION

- The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Side Safety Assist

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from its lane, LDA issues an alert or assists in steering the vehicle back into the lane.
- Lane Departure Assist (LDA) includes two sub-functions: Lane Departure Warning (LDW) and Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) The system's operating speed range is 60–150 km/h.
- Lane departure warning (LDW): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel rotation or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in red), steering wheel vibration, or an audible alert to help reduce lane departure risks.
- Lane departure prevention (LDP): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel rotation or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in blue) and applies steering assistance to guide the vehicle back into the lane, helping reduce lane departure risks.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The LDA alert mode is set as steering wheel vibration by default and can be changed to Sound alert, Vibration alert or Sound + Vibration alert.
- LDA default sensitivity level is set as "Moderate". In case of fatigue driving, the system automatically switches to "High". Restarting the vehicle restores sensitivity to "Moderate".
- OFF: no LDA functions active.
- Reminder: turns on LDW only, which does not implement steering intervention.
- Correction: turns on LDP to offer corrective steering inputs.
- All activated: Activating both the lane departure warning (LDW) and lane departure prevention (LDP) at the same time.

REMINDER

- LDA is suppressed if a turn signal is used and the vehicle changes lane as indicated by the turn signal.
- LDA is suppressed in the event of continued lane straddling.
- LDP will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- LDA is suppressed if any door, the hood, or the tailgate is open or faulty.
- The camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If it does not, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- While LDP is activated, the driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel, otherwise the system will audibly prompt the driver to take over the steering wheel.
- When LDA fails, is displayed on the instrument cluster with an audible alert and a prompt message. have the system repaired immediately.

System limitations

- LDA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- Lane marking detection is sensitive to the environment. Situations that may lead to LDA failure or performance degradation include but are not limited to:
  - The windshield is dirty or fogged, or the front cameras are blocked.
  - There is glare from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles.
  - The light changes suddenly, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - Lane markings obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight on sunny days
  - Visibility is poor due to snow, rain, or fog.
  - Lane markings are confusing or unclear (for example, when old and

new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction).

- Lane markings change rapidly, for example when lanes split, cross, or merge.
- Lane lines are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred, or covered by dirt/snow.
- Lanes may be narrow, change in number, have sudden changes in lane markings (such as on ramps or exits), or feature complex lane arrangements.
- The vehicle is operating on slopes or winding roads where it travels too close to the vehicle ahead or when the vehicle ahead obscures the lane markings.

- The system may be unable to correct steering in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Road conditions are poor such as after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.
  - Excessive or insufficient lateral deviation speed
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle's steering performance happen.
- The system operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the field of view of the front camera, dyed or incorrectly coated windshield, reflective objects placed on the dashboard, or any other interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- For your safety, do not test LDA functions intentionally.
- Do not be over-reliant on LDA functions. LDW only serves to alert for lane departure and cannot assist in steering control.
- LDA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle if the function is suppressed or deactivated.
- Use LDA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- Disabling LDA is recommended under any of the following circumstances:
  - Driving in a sporty style
  - Severe weather conditions
  - On uneven roads
- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Unclear lane lines
  - Lane lines are incomplete.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the cameras or late function activation include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - Extreme weather, such as rain, snow, and smog.
  - Partially or completely blocked camera lens.

CAUTION

- LDW and LDP cannot be activated in special driving modes (if equipped) such as towing, snow, mud, sand, or mountain mode.
- LDA may not work, may work improperly, or may deactivate itself when:
  - System start up during vehicle power-on or reboot
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from the current roadway or lane and there is a collision risk with a vehicle approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane or with oncoming traffic in the opposite lane, ELKA assists in steering correction to help avoid or mitigate a potential collision.
- Emergent Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA) detects lane markings and road edges ahead with sensors such as cameras and detect vehicles in adjacent lanes with mmWave radars. If the vehicle is detected to unintentionally drift out of its lane, or be at risk of doing so, and is likely to collide with a detected target, corrective steering input of ELKA keeps the vehicle in its lane. This helps prevent unintentional lane departures and reduces the risk of collision with oncoming traffic or overtaking vehicles in adjacent lanes.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
  - OFF: ELKA will not operate.
  - On: ELKA is active.

REMINDER

- ELKA will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- If the turn signal is activated and the driver steers in the indicated direction, ELKA will be suppressed when the vehicle is departing toward the road edge or toward the opposite lane with oncoming traffic present (subject to the actual vehicle configuration).
- If the driver continuously drives over lane markings or the road edge, ELKA will be suppressed.
- If there is a risk of deviation from the road* or side collision but corrective steering could result in a collision with an obstacle along the new path, ELKA will not intervene.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If it does not, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- If a malfunction occurs, the indicator will illuminate in the instrument cluster and ELKA will be unavailable. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

System limitations

- ELKA's detection of lane markings, road edges, and obstacles is sensitive to the environment. Situations that may lead to no intervention, inappropriate intervention, or reduced performance of the system include but are not limited to:
  - The windshield is dirty or fogged, or the front cameras are blocked.
  - There is glare from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles.
  - The light changes suddenly, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - Lane markings are obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight.
  - Road boundaries are unidentifiable due to grass, soil, curbs and so on.
  - Visibility is poor due to snow, rain, or fog.
  - Lane markings are confusing or unclear (for example, when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction).
  - Lane markings change rapidly, for example when lanes split, cross, or merge.
  - Lane lines are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred, or covered by dirt/snow.
  - Lanes may be narrow, change in number, have sudden changes in lane markings (such as on ramps or exits), or feature complex lane arrangements.
  - The vehicle is operating on slopes or winding roads where it travels too close to the vehicle ahead or when the vehicle ahead obscures the lane markings.
- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as obstructions, obstacle type, position, or appearance timing, which may result in a delayed action. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - Large vehicles ahead block the radar or camera detection area.
  - Obstacles move quickly or enter the area in front of or beside the vehicle at close range.
  - Fences, traffic barriers, traffic cones, or other obstacles are present in the front-side or rear-side of the vehicle that the system may fail to detect.
  - Obstacles block the radar or camera's detection area, such as vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in the front-side or rear-side areas.
  - Obstacles in the front-side or rear-side areas have low contrast against the surrounding environment.
  - Targets in the front-side or rear-side areas can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
  - Targets in the front-side or rear-side areas are located on a curve.
  - Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.
- The system may be unable to correct steering in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Road conditions are poor such as after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.
  - The lateral deviation speed is excessive or insufficient.
  - Driving on sharp curves.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle's steering performance happen.

- The system operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the field of view of the front camera, dyed or incorrectly coated windshield, reflective objects placed on the dashboard, or any other interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- For your safety, do not test the ELKA function intentionally.
- ELKA only applies corrective steering to guide the vehicle back into its lane in case of lane departure or when there is a risk of collision, instead of keeping it centered. Do not rely on ELKA to avoid side collisions.
- ELKA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Use ELKA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - There are pedestrians, animals, or specialty or specially-shaped vehicles.
  - Lane lines are unclear or incomplete.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late warnings include, but are not limited to:
  - Cameras are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle is operating in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - Camera lens are partially or completely blocked.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late alarms include, but are not limited to:
  - MmWave radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle is operating in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - ELKA cannot be activated in special driving modes (if equipped) such as towing, snow, mud, sand, or mountain mode.
- ELKA may not work, may work improperly, or may deactivate itself when:
  - The vehicle is at an intersection.
  - System start up during vehicle power-on or reboot
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Blind spot detection (BSD)

- When a target in the driver's blind spot is detected, the system issues a warning to remind the driver of safe driving. The function is enabled by default.
- The Blind Spot Detection (BSD) system uses sensors such as radars to detect targets such as vehicles or cyclists in the driver's blind spot. When the vehicle is traveling at about 15-150 km/h, the side mirror indicator flashes if BSD detects a target in the blind area. If the driver toggles the turn signal lever at this time, the side mirror indicator on the target side, the instrument indicator, and the light-colored radar wave on the same side of the instrument will flash, with an audible alarm given (optional) to warn the driver of a possible collision.



REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects to the side mirror lens, as it may interfere with the normal operation of BSD.
- Ensure the normal operation of the BSD system, keeping its radars in good condition. For example, dirt, snow, or other obstructions need to be cleared right away.
- BSD will not operate in the travel with trailer mode.

REMINDER

- Influence of vibration or collision on the side mmWave radars can degrade the BSD system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- This function is enabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System limitations

- BSD is a driver assistance feature and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- BSD and its related features may operate improperly or deactivate in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, or other extreme weather.
  - The vehicle is driving on sharp curves.
  - The vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h.
  - The vehicle is overtaking the preceding vehicle or encountering an oncoming vehicle.
  - System start up during vehicle power-on or reboot
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.

- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.

- Poor lighting conditions, such as glare or reflections, may cause the system to incorrectly detect obstacles. For example, railroad tracks, gantries, height restriction bars, traffic signs, or reflective road studs may be misidentified as obstacles, triggering an unintended warning.

WARNING

- When the BSD system gives a warning, the driver should avoid lane changes toward the warning-indicated side. Always change lanes in a safe manner.
- BSD cannot replace interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Door open warning (DOW)

- When detecting a risk of collision when opening the door, the system gives a warning to alert the driver, reducing the possibility of collision and improving safety. The function is enabled by default.
- Door Open Warning (DOW) detects targets (vehicles, cyclists) on both sides of the vehicle through sensors such as radars. When the vehicle is stationary with power on or moving slowly at a speed below 2 km/h, the alarm indicator on the side mirror illuminates when DOW detects a collision risk during door opening. The indicator remains on until DOW is deactivated. If an occupant opens the door at this time, the indicator on the corresponding side flashes and an audio alert sounds, reminding the occupant of the collision risk.

REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects to the side mirror lens, as it may affect DOW operation.
- Ensure the normal operation of the DOW system, keeping its radars in good condition. Dirt, snow, or other obstructions should be removed promptly.
- In towing mode, DOW does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the side mmWave radars can degrade the DOW system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The function is enabled by default.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System limitations

- DOW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- DOW and its related features may operate improperly or deactivate in the following situations (including but not limited to):

- Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, or other extreme weather.
- The vehicle stops at a turning point or near a wall.
- A large vehicle behind blocks the radar detection area.
- There are small targets or slow-moving targets.
- The target is moving fast or turning, such as changing lanes to the rear of your vehicle, or suddenly entering the detection area behind your vehicle.
- The system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.

- Poor lighting conditions, such as glare or reflections, may cause the system to misdetect obstacles. For example, railroad tracks, gantries, height restriction bars, traffic signs, or reflective road studs may be misidentified as obstacles, triggering an unintended warning.

WARNING

- DOW cannot detect objects behind other vehicles or obstacles.
- DOW cannot replace the use of interior and exterior rearview mirrors or manual visual checks. Visually checking the surroundings before opening a door is the most effective safety measure and the responsibility of all occupants.

WARNING

- DOW may give a warning when there is no risk of collision. Stay alert and monitor traffic to decide if action is needed.
- DOW can only prompt the collision risk through warning, but cannot avoid the collision accident.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Rear Safety Assist

Rear collision warning (RCW)

- The system issues a warning to the driver when a collision from behind is detected while moving forward.
- When the vehicle is traveling below 150 km/h, the rear collision warning (RCW) system monitors the rear driving environment in real time using sensors such as radars and cameras. The system issues a warning when a rear-end collision risk is detected.
- During warning, the interior ambient lights and the front left/right ambient lights on the corresponding side illuminate steadily, and the rear area of the vehicle image on the instrument cluster is highlighted in red. The hazard warning lights are also activated to alert following drivers.
- When reversing, the RCW system does not work.

WARNING

- RCW is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, target type, distance to the target, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in delayed warnings, missed alerts, or false warnings. RCW cannot replace your judgment and operation.
- Ensure the normal operation of the RCW system, keeping its radars in good condition. Dirt, snow, or other obstructions should be removed promptly.
- In towing mode, RCW does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the side mmWave radars can degrade the RCW system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- This function is disabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System limitations

- RCW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The RCW system only takes effect when the vehicle is stationary or moving forward. RCW does not operate while the vehicle is reversing.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, or other extreme weather.
  - Any door, the hood, or the tailgate is open or faulty.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel, or the vehicle has a risk of lateral instability (such as excessive steering wheel angle or high steering rate).
  - The driver brakes hard.
  - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, or appearance timing, which may result in no warning or a delayed warning. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - The vehicle is operating in poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - Large vehicles behind block the radar or camera detection area.
  - The rear area is obstructed, or the obstacles have low contrast against the front environment, resulting in incomplete, inaccurate, or unclear detection.
  - The vehicle or the rear target is on a curve.

- Targets behind can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
- Obstacles move quickly or enter the area behind the vehicle at close range.
- The vehicle is reversing.
- Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.

- Poor lighting conditions, such as glare or reflections, may cause the system to incorrectly detect obstacles. For example, railroad tracks, gantries, height restriction bars, traffic signs, or reflective road studs may be misidentified as obstacles, triggering an unintended warning.

WARNING

- RCW is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, target type, distance to the target, driving environment, and system response delay. RCW only provides reminder assistance and cannot replace your judgment and operation. Do not be over-reliant on the RCW system. RCW cannot replace your judgment and operation.
- RCW can only remind the collision risk through the reminder, and can not avoid the collision accident or reduce the collision injury. When the vehicle issues a warning, you should take immediate measures to prevent the vehicle from further danger.
- RCW may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

WARNING

Rear cross traffic alert (RCTA)

- When the vehicle is reversing, the rear cross traffic alert (RCTA) system detects moving vehicles in the rear blind spot and issues a warning when it detects a potential collision risk with rear lateral crossing vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists. The RCTA operating speed range is 0–15 km/h.
- This warning is provided through an audible alert, voice notifications, an animation of radar waves indicating the side of possible collision, target rendering on the instrument cluster.

WARNING

- RCTA is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, target type, distance to the target, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in delayed warnings, missed alerts, or false warnings. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

REMINDER

- This function is disabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System limitations

- RCTA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
  - The function is disabled.
  - The vehicle is not in Reverse.
  - System initialization is in progress.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, or appearance timing, which may result in no warning or a delayed warning. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
  - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
  - The vehicle is operating in sharp curves, slopes, or similar road conditions.
  - The target is obscured.
  - The vehicle is operating in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow. Radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked. The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, cyclist, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- In towing mode, RCTA does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the mmWave radars can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary warning may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.

WARNING

- RCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated

WARNING

with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use RCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTA may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Rear cross traffic braking (RCTB)

- The Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB) system warns the driver and assists with braking when the vehicle is reversing out of a vertical or angled parking space and there is a collision risk with rear lateral crossing vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists. This helps avoid collisions with traffic crossing behind the vehicle, particularly when the driver's view is blocked by neighboring parked vehicles. The RCTB operating speed range is 0-10 km/h.
- When braking, the instrument cluster displays light gray radar waves on the corresponding side of the vehicle and textual prompts to alert the driver of potential risks.

WARNING

- RCTB serves as a driver assistance function only, which helps the driver avoid or reduce the impact of collisions.

WARNING

- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking efficiency, and tire status. It may also be mistakenly triggered by misidentification. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

System limitations

- RCTB is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to brake in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
  - The function is set to "OFF" or "Warning only".
  - The vehicle is not in Reverse.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - System initialization is in progress.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.

  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or experience delayed detection of obstacles due to factors such as rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, or timing, which may result in no braking or a delayed braking. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
  - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
  - The vehicle is operating in sharp curves, slopes, or similar road conditions.
  - The target is obscured.
  - The vehicle is operating in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow. Radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked. The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, cyclist, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- In towing mode, RCTB does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the mmWave radars can degrade system performance. If this is detected, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, RCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- RCTB is only used as a driving assistance function, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTB to fail or lead to late braking.
- Use RCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTB may be delayed, missed, or triggered unnecessarily due to system limitations.

Lighting

Adaptive Front Light (AFL)

- Adaptive front light (AFL) is a driver assistance feature that helps the driver use the high beam appropriately in dark environments. In the dark, the system switches from low beam to high beam to provide the driver with the maximum field of vision. When an oncoming vehicle is detected,

the system automatically switches from high beam to low beam to prevent dazzling other drivers. It also automatically switches to low beam in urban areas or under other conditions.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Light** → **Exterior**.

Standby	Activated	Fault
		

AFL on/off conditions

- Auto activation conditions:
  - The light switch is in the AUTO position.
  - The vehicle speed is 35 km/h ⩽ 140km/h.
  - The area in front of the vehicle is dark.
- Auto off conditions:
  - During daylight or nighttime conditions, the system automatically suppresses the high beam when sufficient ambient lighting is detected on the road.
  - At night, the system automatically suppresses the high beam when other vehicles or pedestrians are detected within a certain range in front of the vehicle.
  - At night, turning on turn signal suppresses the high beam. After the turn signal is turned off, the high beam is activated again if conditions are met.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- AFL indicators:

WARNING

Due to a variety of environmental factors and conditions, the intelligent high beam may be triggered or disabled by mistake. Typical scenarios include, but are not limited to:

- The weather, such as fog, rain or snow, is extremely terrible for driving.
- There are traffic participants with poor lighting (such as pedestrians and bicycles), railways or waterways nearby, or wild animals on the roads.
- There are strongly reflective objects around, such as traffic signs on highways and water reflection on the road surface.
- The windshield is dirty, covered in mist, or blocked by stickers or decorations.

CAUTION

- AFL serves as an auxiliary light control and cannot replace the

CAUTION

driver's judgment. You must observe road regulations and switch between high and low beams based on changing road conditions.

- In case there is a collision or the sensor has been reassembled, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for sensor calibration so as to avoid affecting system performance.

REMINDER

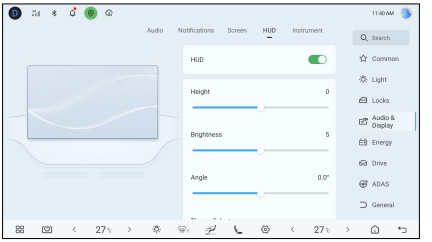
- System malfunctions or lighting system failures can affect the IHBC function.
- Activating high beam manually will suppress AFL.

Head-up Display (W-HUD)*

Head-up Display (HUD): The head-up display (HUD) function projects important information on the instrument cluster, including vehicle speed, gear, etc., into the driver's field of view on the front windshield. It improves driving safety by preventing the driver from frequently changing the focus of eyes.

How to Use

- To enable or disable HUD, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Audio&Display**.
- By factory default, HUD is on and the image is displayed. When it is disabled, no HUD image is displayed. The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle starts.



- Height adjusting: adjust the height of HUD virtual image in between -10 and 10. A total of 21 values are available, and the default value is 0.
- Brightness adjusting: adjust the brightness of HUD virtual image in between 1 and 11. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 6.
- Whirling adjusting: adjust the angle of HUD virtual image. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 0°.
- Mode setting: select Classic (default setting) or Snow mode according to the environment of the vehicle.
- Settings optional for display: Safe driving assistance can be selected and is enabled by default.

CAUTION

- Make sure that the head-up display is unobstructed.
- Wipe the dust on the HUD dust-proof board with a soft cotton cloth or paper towel.
- Make sure no water or other liquid flow into the opening of the head-up display.

Driver Monitoring Systems (DMS)*

The Driver Monitoring System (DMS), including fatigue and distraction driving warnings, is designed to monitor and assess the driving status locally by taking cabin photos with the system's camera. Based on the results, it reminds the driver of safe and careful driving. The system will not save and upload the driver's data.

How to Use

- The camera for driver monitoring assistance is mounted on the A-pillar of the driver's side. Make sure it is unobstructed before use, or DMS may not function normally.
- When the ignition switched on, set the driver monitoring systems on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Cabin Perception**.



Functions

Fatigue driving warning

- With the vehicle speed meeting the system activation condition, fatigue driving warning enabled and the camera unobstructed, when the system detects signs of fatigue, such as closing eyes, it alerts the driver promptly through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, or through intelligent voice or an audible alarm.

Distraction driving warning

- With the vehicle speed meeting the system activation condition, distraction driving warning enabled and the camera unobstructed, when the system detects signs of distraction, for example, the sight deviates from the front for a certain period of time, and there is no steering action or the turn signals are not turned on, it alerts the driver promptly through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, or through intelligent voice or an audible alarm.

Activation Conditions

- DMS enabled.
- Camera unobstructed and functioning normally.

REMINDER

- Clean the DMS camera lens with a clean and soft cloth and exercise caution to prevent any damage to the surface.

Precautions

- The driver monitoring system is only an auxiliary system and is not capable of effective recognition and alarm-raising in all situations. It cannot completely replace the driver's subjective observation and judgment. The driver must maintain control of the vehicle at all times, complying with all road laws and regulations, and taking full responsibility for the vehicle.
- The proper functioning and accuracy of DMS can be affected by a number of situations, including but not limited to:
  - Driver monitoring assistance is disabled.

- The camera is directly exposed to strong light.
- Part of the driver's face is exposed to light or the complete facial features are hard to recognize.
- The driver wears infrared-blocking glasses or glasses with thick lenses.
- The driver wears a mask or objects that covers the face.
- The driver is not properly seated or the driver's face is in the blind spot of the camera.

WARNING

- The driver should stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible when feeling tired to avoid fatigue driving.

Child Presence Detection (CPD)*

After the vehicle is powered off and the doors are closed or locked, child presence detection (CDP), as an auxiliary reminder function, is performed to detects life presence inside the vehicle. If life presence is detected, a reminder is given in the form of light flashing and honking. The A/C will be switched on soon after. Open any door to cancel the reminder.

Function settings

- To access the CPD setting interface, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Cabin Perception**. Four options are provided: OFF, ON, Standard, and Delay.
- The CPD system retains its previous state when the vehicle is restarted.
- OFF: CPD function is disabled.
- Delay: the alarm starts in about 5 minutes.

Activation Conditions

- CPD is activated when all the following conditions are met:
  - The vehicle is powered off.
  - The driver's door is opened and then closed.
  - All doors are closed.
  - CPD is enabled on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - CPD system has no fault.

System Response

Initial alarm

- When CPD enabled with standard alarm mode, if life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off and locked, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 90 seconds and will last for about 6 seconds.
- When CPD enabled with standard alarm mode, if life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off with doors closed but unlocked, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 5 minutes and will last for about 6 seconds.
- When CPD is enabled with delay alarm mode, if life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off with doors closed, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 5 minutes and will last for about 6 seconds.

Escalated alarm

- If not canceled, the alarm (light flashing and honking) escalates after 80 seconds and will last for about 25 minutes.

- Other system responses: The A/C will be switched on three minutes after alarm escalation, and will keep running for about 30 minutes.

Alarm canceling

- When alarm is triggered, tap the button on the infotainment touchscreen to cancel the alarm. The setting will remain effective during the current power-off cycle (i.e., from the current power-off to the next power-on).
- When alarm is triggered, open any door to cancel the alarm. Unlocking the vehicle temporarily cancels the current alarm; if the user does not open any door promptly, the alarm will be retriggered.

Message delivery

- The user will receive messages in the BYD app and email of every initial alarm, escalated alarm and other system responses.

WARNING

- The system notifies users with light flashing, honking, app message prompts, SMS, and A/C operation to reduce the harm to the presence in the vehicle. However, CPD is only an auxiliary system and may not reliably detect or issue reminders in all circumstances. The user must remain alarm at all times and fully responsible for the lives in the vehicle.
- When a reminder is provided, check whether any life presence has been locked inside the vehicle promptly to avoid further safety incident.

CAUTION

- CPD is only an auxiliary reminder system, and cannot ensure every alarm-raising when life presence is left in the vehicle. The user must remain alarm (especially for child) at all times and fully responsible for the lives in the vehicle.
- The system ceases to function if CPD is truned off. At this time, lives left inside the vehicle will not trigger an alarm. Take caution when choosing to disable this function.
- The alarm may be given for adults, pets, or other lives detected.
- The alarm may be given for moving objects detected.
- The alarm cannot be canceled by unlocking the vehicle remotely from the app.
- The system may not be able to trigger an escalated alarm or switch on the A/C if the SOC is low. Keeping the vehicle at high SOC is recommended.

Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System

- The direct tire pressure monitoring system is an auxiliary system that monitors tire pressure in real time to improve vehicle safety and comfort and reduce tire wear and energy consumption due to insufficient tire pressure.
- You can navigate to the driving information bar by pressing the button on the steering wheel and to the tire pressure display screen by pressing the button again.

Tire pressure system alarm

- When the pressure of any tire is lower than 80% of the standard tire pressure and the system is running, the tire pressure fault warning light lights up and the tire pressure value turns yellow. In that case, it is recommended to check for slow air leakage and inflate the tire to the correct pressure value.
- When the temperature of any tire is above 85°C for three consecutive minutes, the tire pressure system gives a high temperature alarm, and the temperature value of the corresponding tire turns yellow. You are then recommended to stop the vehicle and wait for the tire temperature to decrease before further driving.
- When the system is running, if a fault occurs, the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on after flashing, and the message "No Signal" or "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster. In that case, check the tire pressure monitoring module, and check for any surrounding electromagnetic source nearby. If the alarm persists for a long time, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The system does not stop vehicle traveling in the event of abnormal tire pressure. Therefore, each time before driving, ensure that the tire pressure conforms to the requirements specified by the manufacturer. If not, do not drive, otherwise vehicle damage or personal injury can occur.
- If pressure is found to be abnormal while driving, check the tire pressure immediately. If the low pressure warning light comes on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and reduce vehicle speed, pull it over to the curb and stop as soon as possible. Driving with low tire pressure can cause permanent damage to tires and increase the likelihood of tire scrapping. Serious tire damage can lead to traffic accidents, resulting in serious injuries or deaths.

CAUTION

- The running time of the tire pressure monitoring module is related to the daily travel distance and other factors.
- The monitoring module regularly transmits tire pressure and other information to the display. Therefore, if the tire pressure drops suddenly or there is a flat tire, the monitoring module will not transmit data to the display until the next monitoring. In this case, the vehicle may be out of control. If there is a flat tire and monitoring fails to inform, or if you feel that there are some tire problems, stop driving immediately instead of waiting for the display to signal an alarm.
- Incorrectly installed monitoring module affects the air tightness of the tire. It is recommended that the installation and replacement of the pressure monitoring module be carried out by professional technicians of a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in accordance with the requirements of the installation manual.

CAUTION

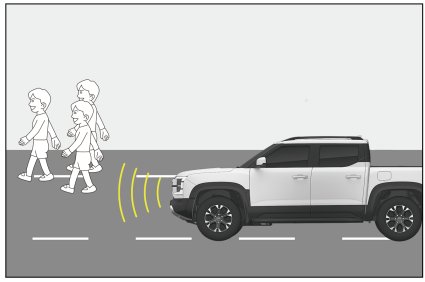
- Since tire pressure varies with regional temperatures, inflate or deflate the tires according to the values displayed on the instrument cluster and the standard tire pressure values.
- The tire pressure monitoring system may be disturbed by non-BYD approved electrical accessories on the vehicle. This is not a tire pressure system failure.
- The tire pressure system needs to be matched again after replacement of wheel rims or spare tirer or tire rotations. Please go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to re-match the tire pressure.

Acoustic Vehicle Alert System (AVAS)

System Function

The Acoustic Vehicle Alert System(AVAS) refers to the broadcast to pedestrians near the vehicle when it is traveling at low speed.

- When driving forward:
  - The broadcast volume increases with vehicle speed in the range of 0 km/h<V≤20 km/h.
  - The broadcast volume decreases with vehicle speed in the range of 20 km/h<V≤30 km/h.
  - At speeds above 30 km/h, the broadcast sound stops automatically.



- The vehicle makes a continuous and balanced prompt sound when moving in reverse.

Disabling/Enabling the System

- To turn on or off (not supported in some regions) the engine sound simulator, slide down from the top of the infotainment touchscreen to access the shortcut screen.

WARNING

- The AVAS pause switch can only be used if there are no other road users within a short distance, and no audio prompt is needed considering the surroundings (for example, in a traffic jam or on the motorway). As long as pedestrians may appear around the vehicle, the AVAS needs to be turned on.
- If the vehicle is running at low speed with AVAS turned off, it is unable to alert pedestrians to the approaching vehicle, which may cause car accidents and even casualties in severe cases.
- If the AVAS prompt sound cannot be heard when driving at a low speed, stop the vehicle in a relatively safe and quiet place, open a window, then drive at a constant speed of 20 km/h in Drive and check whether an audio prompt can be heard from

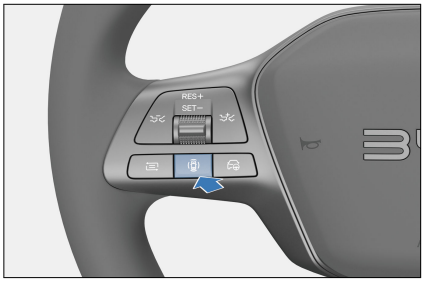
WARNING

the front of the vehicle. If it is confirmed that there is no sound, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Around View Monitor (AVM)*

The around view monitor (AVM) system, also known as the 360-degree imaging system, provides real-time image (bird's-eye view) by seamlessly stitching images from four wide-angle cameras installed at the front, rear, left, and right sides of the vehicle. This helps the driver understand the surrounding blind spots including areas close to the ground.

- AVM activation method:
  - To access the AVM screen, press the AVM button on the steering wheel.
  - Shifting to Reverse can automatically start the AVM system.
  - AVM can be activated by settings such as triggering by radars.
  - Use voice command to activate AVM if BYD Assistant is enabled.



  - When the gear is in Park or Neutral, or when the vehicle is in Drive and the speed is less than 15 km/h, activate AVM by operating the turn signal lever (the low-speed turn signal activation function is enabled in the settings).
- In the AVM interface, the right is the sidebar, the middle is the top-down stitched image, and the left is the single view or dual view.
  - Click the front, rear, left and right buttons of the vehicle model in the central area to switch the view of the vehicle in four directions.



  - Tap the radar icon on the AVM screen to enable the radar display, and tap again to disable it. When the radar display is enabled, a warning is displayed as the vehicle is approaching an obstacle.
- Dual view: Click the button in the far-right sidebar to switch to the dual view of the vehicle.
- Transparent around view: Click on the vehicle model in the central bird’ s-eye view stitched image to switch between transparent and non-transparent vehicle model images.
- AVM settings: Configure the following features on the AVM settings interface:
  - Trigger methods: smart view (radar-triggered specific views) and low-speed turn signal activation;
  - Vehicle image: Vehicle color.
  - Other tips: restore the default settings.

AVM Icon	Name
	AVM Settings
	Parking radar
	Dual view
	Floating window

WARNING

- AVM system serves as a driver assistance function only, so the driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Do not rely solely on the AVM system while driving, as it may not accurately detect objects or pedestrians in approaching areas. It is necessary to use all the rearview mirrors to make a comprehensive judgment.
- This system uses wide-angle fisheye cameras, so the object on the display screen may appear somewhat deformed in comparison with the actual object.
- The system is only to be used for parking/driving assistance. It is not safe to rely solely on this system to park or drive the vehicle, because there are some blind spots in front of and behind the vehicle. The surroundings of the vehicle should be observed in other ways during the parking/driving process, so as to avoid accidents.
- When the side mirrors are not extended in place, do not use the AVM system; and when the AVM system is used for operating the vehicle, ensure that all doors are closed.

WARNING

- The distance to an object displayed on the AVM screen may be different from the distance perceived subjectively, especially when the object is closer to the vehicle. Assess the distance in various ways.
- Cameras are installed above the front bumper, the lower parts of the side mirrors, and the rear license plate. Please ensure that the cameras are not blocked.
- To prevent impairing camera performance, avoid spraying directly on the cameras with high-pressure water. Wipe any water or dust off the camera in time.
- Protect the cameras from any impact to prevent damage or malfunction.
- After the vehicle is powered on, if you press the around view button or shift into Reverse while the infotainment system is not fully activated, the output on the around view screen will be delayed or the screen will flash. This is a normal part of the camera power-on process.
- When the vehicle runs at a low speed, the transparent AVM view function is affected by speed fluctuation or multiple stops,

WARNING

so there will be misalignment between the images below the vehicle and that outside the vehicle.

Parking Assist System

Parking Assist System

- During vehicle parking brake, the parking assist system detects obstacles by sensors, and prompts the driver with the proximity of obstacles by an image on the infotainment touchscreen and a speaker alarm.
- This system aids in reversing, but always remain aware of the surroundings behind and around the vehicle during reversing.
- When you shift into Reverse, the infotainment touchscreen will automatically display a reversing image.
- For your driving safety, when the reversing image is displayed, all buttons will be disabled except some volume and calls-related buttons.
- After reversing ends, the interface will be restored.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle speed is over 10 km/h, the parking assist system will cease to operate.
- Do not place any objects within the sensors' working range.
- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor with water or steam.

Parking Sensor Switch

- To turn the parking sensors on or off, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Parking Assist**.
- When the ignition is switched on, the parking assist system is enabled automatically.
- When the parking assist system is enabled, the vehicle is not in "P", and the EPB and AVH are released, the obstacle detection mode of the parking assist system is enabled. When enabled, the system raises an alarm if obstacles are found surrounding the vehicle; when disabled, it does not.

Sensor Type

- When the sensor detects an obstacle, an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen according to the location of the obstacle and its distance from the vehicle.
- When the driver conducts parallel parking or reverse parking, the sensor measures the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle and communicates this information through the infotainment touchscreen and the speaker. Be aware of the surroundings when using this system.

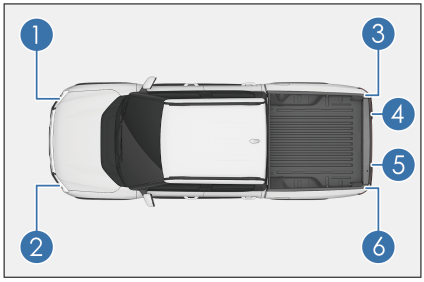
①Front right corner sensor

②Front left corner sensor

③Rear right corner sensor

④⑤Rear center sensors

⑥Rear left corner sensor



Distance Display and Speaker

When the sensor detects an obstacle, the location of the obstacle and its approximate distance from the vehicle are displayed on the infotainment touchscreen, and the speaker beeps.

Working examples of center sensors

Approximate Distance	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm Sound
About 700 to 1,200 mm		Slow
About 400 to 700 mm		Fast
About 200 to 400 mm		Continuous

Working example of corner sensors

Approximate Distance	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm Sound
About 400 to 600 mm		Fast
About 200 to 400 mm		Continuous

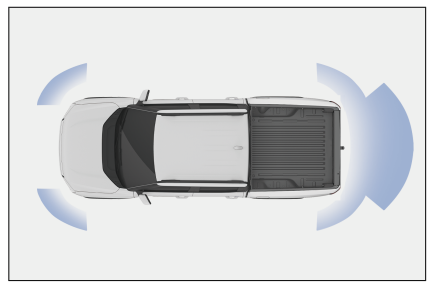
CAUTION

- 0-200mm is the blind spot range of the system. For the poor detection accuracy and inaccurate alarm information, the alarm prompts in 0-200mm are for reference only.

Working Sensors and Detection Range

All sensors are activated upon reversing.

The figure shows the sensors' detection range. Sensors have a range limitation, so the driver must check the surroundings before slowly reversing the vehicle.



REMINDER

- The parking assist system is only used for assistance rather than substitution of your personal judgment. Be sure to operate

REMINDER

the vehicle based on your observations.

- Sensors will not work properly if accessories or other objects are placed within their detection range.
- In some cases, the system cannot operate properly and will fail to detect certain objects as the vehicle approaches them. Therefore, be sure to observe the vehicle's surroundings at all times. Do not rely solely upon the system.
- Failure of the parking radar system is indicated by the message " Parking radar failed, please contact BYD service" on the instrument cluster and a beep. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.

Sensor detection information

- Certain vehicle conditions and surroundings may affect the sensors' ability to accurately detect obstacles. Detection accuracy may be affected if:
  - There is dirt, water or fog on the sensor.
  - There is snow or frost on the sensor.
  - The sensor is masked in any way.
  - The vehicle leans significantly to one side or is overloaded.
  - The vehicle is moving on particularly bumpy roads, slopes, gravel or grass.
  - The sensor has been repainted.
  - The vicinity is noisy due to honking of vehicles, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other noises that produce ultrasonic waves.
  - There's another vehicle with parking assist system nearby.
  - The vehicle is fitted with a tow eye.
  - The bumper or the sensor was hit hard.
  - The vehicle is approaching a high or zigzag curb.
  - The vehicle is driving in the sun or in the cold.
  - The vehicle is fitted with non-original, lower suspension.
- Except as described above, sensors may not be able to correctly determine the actual distance due to the shape of the object.
- The shape and material of obstacles may prevent sensors from detecting them, especially the following:
  - Electric wires, fences, and ropes
  - Cotton, snow, and other materials that absorb radio waves
  - Any object with sharp edges and corners
  - Low obstacles
  - High obstacles facing outwards towards the vehicle
  - Any object under the bumper
  - Any object close to the vehicle
  - Persons near the vehicle (depending on the type of clothing)
- If an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen or there is a beep, it may be that the sensor detects an obstacle or is interfered. If the issue persists, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for a service.

CAUTION

- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor area with water or steam.

Driving Safety Systems

For better driving safety, the following driving safety systems works automatically based on driving conditions. However, these systems only provide assistance, and excessive reliance on them is not recommended.

Intelligent Power Braking System

- The intelligent power braking system is an advanced decoupled electro-hydraulic brake system, incorporating vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, Antilock Braking System (ABS), ESC system, and other features.
- The system assists vehicle braking according to the driver's demands. It offers advanced control functions such as anti-lock braking system (ABS), electronic brake force distribution (EBD), traction control system (TCS), vehicle dynamic control (VDC), adaptive cruise control (ACC), automatic emergency braking (AEB), comfort stop (CST), cooperative regenerative brake systems (CRBS) to improve vehicle stability and comfort, and the recovery efficiency of brake energy.

Vehicle Dynamics Control(VDC)

When the vehicle turns suddenly while running, the VDC system determines the driver's intention based on such information as steering wheel's angle and vehicle speed, and continuously compares with the actual condition. If the vehicle swerves from the normal lane, the VDC corrects the situation by engaging brakes to the corresponding wheels to help the driver control skidding and maintain directional stability.

Traction Control System(TCS)

TCS prevents the drive wheels from skidding during acceleration by reducing the motor power, and, when necessary, applies braking forces to prevent drive wheels from spinning. It makes it easier for the vehicle to start, accelerate, and climb under adverse driving conditions.

WARNING

- TCS may not work effectively in the following situations:
  - On slippery roads, even if TCS is working properly, it may not be able to control the direction and meet power requirements.
  - Do not drive in conditions where the vehicle may lose its stability and power.

Hill Hold Control(HHC)

After the brake pedal is released, HHC maintains brake pressure for one second to prevent backward sliding.

Hydraulic Brake Assist(HBA)

When you press the brake pedal quickly, HBA detects that the vehicle is in emergency condition. It quickly increases the brake pressure to the maximum so that ABS can intervene more quickly and shorten the braking distance effectively.

Controller Deceleration Parking(CDP)

When "P" button is pressed and held, CDP starts to work and the vehicle brakes at a constant deceleration until the vehicle comes to a stop. If the driver releases "P" button, CDP stops functioning.

Hill Descent Control(HDC)

- Working principle: HDC is a value-added function of the ESC system to improve vehicle comfort. You can enable or disable HDC on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Intelligent Asssist**. HDC mainly works for assisting in uphill and downhill slow driving through active braking. When HDC is working, ABS is activated when the wheel slip exceeds the ABS triggering threshold, allowing you to safely and smoothly go downhill, or even reverse.
- Activate HDC:
  - When the speed is below 38 km/h, you can also enable HDC by pressing the HDC switch. When the function is enabled, its status indicator on the instrument cluster is steady on.
- HDC speed control:
  - HDC works at speeds between 11 km/h and 38 km/h, within which you can adjust the speed by pressing/releasing the accelerator or brake pedal. The vehicle speed is set when the accelerator or brake pedal is released. The HDC status indicator flashes to indicate that the HDC is working.
- Deactivate HDC:
  - Press the HDC switch again to disable the function, and the indicator turns off.
  - HDC also automatically stops when the speed exceeds about 65 km/h.
- HDC malfunction:
  - In some special cases such as long downhill, the HDC function may be temporarily disabled due to the high temperature of the brake.
  - A "Please check the HDC system" message is displayed for safety. To restore the function, stop the vehicle until the brake temperature cools down.

Intelligent power braking system has the following new functions compared with the original ESC system:

- Brake assist mode
  - The brake assist mode is used to adjust the brake pedal feel. The relation curve between the brake pedal depth and the vehicle deceleration varies across different modes for the driver to choose their preferred pedal feel.
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, you can set steering assistance to Comfort or Sport mode in ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Driving Control** → **Steering Assist Mode**.
- Comfort stop (CST)
  - Comfort parking: When the vehicle decelerates to stop in a non-emergency situation, the intelligent power braking system reduces the stop-instant suspension pitch and impact by controlling the brake pressure of the four brakes, providing a smooth stop feeling for the driver.
  - Enable or disable this function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control**.
  - After the function is triggered, the braking distance may increase by 2-5 cm. Increase the distance from the vehicle or obstacle ahead accordingly before stopping your vehicle.
- Brake disc wiping
  - Brake disc wiping function: When the wiper switch is on or the rain sensor detects rain, the integrated brake control system applies a small brake pressure to all four brakes so that pads come into contact with discs to remove the water film from the

discs. This shortens brake response time and braking distance.

- As long as the system detects rain or the wiper ON signal, the brake discs are repeatedly wiped at certain intervals to improve safety.

ESC operation instructions

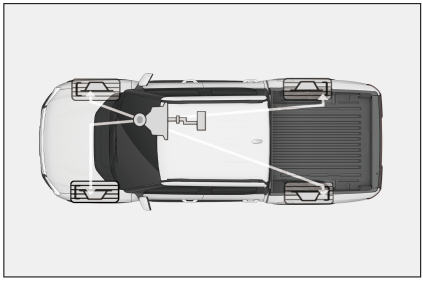
- ESC working
  - If there is a risk of skidding or backsliding when the vehicle starts on a slope, or if either drive wheel is spinning, the ESC indicator flashes to indicate that ESC system is working.
- Disabling ESC
  - If the vehicle gets stuck in snow or mud, ESC may reduce power output from the motor to the wheels. In this case, you may need to turn off the system to get out of the jam.
- Turning off ESC
  - To turn off ESC, press and release the ESC OFF button. ESC also checks its operating status in real time. If ESC OFF switch is pressed while ESC system is working, the system will complete the active intervention control rather than executes the "shutdown" command immediately. ESC is disabled only after the intervention control is complete.
  - Some ESC functions may be re-enabled if you press the ESC OFF switch again or the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold (80 km/h). In order to prevent ESC from being turned off suddenly, ESC can be activated again only when it is not in a vehicle dynamic intervention state.
- ESC OFF switch mis-operation*
  - ESC is considered to be mis-operated if the ESC OFF switch* is pressed and held for more than 10 seconds. In that case, all internal ESC functions continue to work.
- Restarting the ESC system
  - When the ESC system has been turned off, restarting the vehicle will automatically restart ESC system.
- ESC start and speed linkage
  - Although already turned off, the ESC system can start on its own if the vehicle becomes extremely unstable as the speed increases and exceeds the threshold of 80 km/h.
- With ESC system activated
  - If the ESC fault indicator flashes, drive with caution.
- With ESC system disabled
  - Be careful when ESC is disabled, and drive at speeds suitable for road conditions. The ESC system ensures vehicle stability and its driving force. Never turn it off unless necessary.
- Replacing tires
  - Make sure all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern, and total load. In addition, be sure to inflate tires to the recommended pressure.
  - Neither ABS nor ESC will work properly if the vehicle is fitted with different tires.
  - For details on tire or wheel replacement, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Tire and suspension handling
  - The use of any defective tire or modified suspension affects the driving safety system and may cause the system to fail.

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)*

- If an accident requires airbags activation, the vehicle engages automatic braking.
- Speed reduction, along with intervention by additional driving systems (ESC and ABS), assists the vehicle to maintain stability and lane position.
- Hazard and brake lights also light up to alert oncoming traffic and prevent further collisions.
- To support emergency service rescue and vehicle recovery, brakes will release and brake lights will go off after the accident.
- The driver can interrupt the multi-collision braking* at any time by accelerating or braking.

Anti-lock Braking System

- The ABS hydraulic system has two separate circuits, each running diagonally through the vehicle (the right front wheel brake connected to the left rear wheel brake). If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked.
- ABS helps maintain the steering control by preventing the wheels from locking when brake is engaged suddenly or on slippery roads.



- When the ABS is working, the ESC indicator will flash and the brake pedal will vibrate, which may produce noise. This is normal because ABS is pulsating the brake quickly. In this situation, you should press and hold the brake pedal instead of pumping the brakes repeatedly. This allows ABS to function as designed. While steering away from danger, a firm and steady pressure should always be maintained on the brake pedal for the ABS to work.

WARNING

- ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:
  - Tires with inadequate grip are used (for example, excessively worn tires used on snow-covered roads).
  - The vehicle skids when driving at a high speed on slippery roads.
- ABS is not designed to reduce the braking distance of the vehicle. Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead when:
  - Driving on slippery, muddy, sandy or snowy roads.
  - Driving on roads with multiple potholes or on uneven roads.
  - Driving on bumpy roads.

CAUTION

- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the braking system warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.

CAUTION

- ABS does not reduce the time and distance required to stop the vehicle. This device only helps you control steering when braking. Please always keep a safe distance from other vehicles.
- ABS does not prevent decrease in stability. When applying the brake in an emergency, the steering should be moderate. A large or sharp turn during the driving can cause the vehicle to swerve into oncoming traffic or run off the road.
- ABS cannot prevent skidding caused by sudden direction change, such as trying to make a sharp turn or change lanes suddenly. Always drive carefully at a safe speed, regardless of road and weather conditions.
- When driving on wet or soft or uneven roads (such as waterlogged concrete roads, waterlogged epoxy painted roads, sandy roads, snowy roads), vehicles equipped with ABS may require longer braking distances than vehicles without ABS. In such cases, reduce the vehicle speed and keep a greater distance from other vehicles.

05 IN-VEHICLE DEVICES

Infotainment System.....200
A/C System.....210
Storage.....215
Other Devices.....217

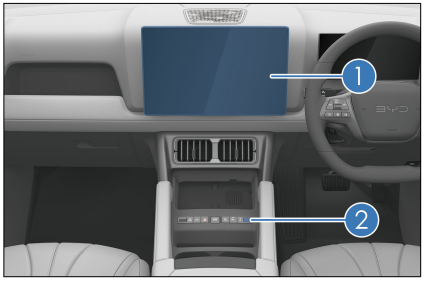
Infotainment System

Infotainment Touchscreen

When the ignition is on, the initial screen is displayed for several seconds and the infotainment system starts to work. To better experience infotainment functions, such as apps and Internet calls, the system is recommended to be used after network connection.

① Infotainment touchscreen

② Scroll button



- When the infotainment system is already started, scroll up to turn volume up or down to turn volume down. Volume ranges from 0 to 39. A mute icon is displayed when volume is 0.
- During audio playback, press the scroll button to mute or unmute the audio.
- With the infotainment system on, press the scroll button to mute the sound and enter the screen saver interface or turn off the screen. Press the scroll button again to turn off the mute and turn on the screen.

Restarting the infotainment system

- When the infotainment touchscreen does not respond or malfunctions, restart the infotainment system:

1. Pull over at a safe place and shift into Park.
2. Press and hold the scroll button for three seconds to restart the infotainment system.

WARNING

- Do not operate the vehicle during the start.
- Restart the system only when the vehicle is stationary in Park because no information, including vehicle conditions, warnings, and camera data, is displayed during the process.

Reset to factory settings

- To factory reset the infotainment system, tap **Application** → → **System** → **Reset options**.
- This function factory resets the infotainment system.
  - During the process, do not touch any infotainment button or turn off the power supply, or errors may occur.
  - The process takes two to five minutes, please wait patiently.

WARNING

- Do not use a high-power inverter in the vehicle, as this may cause infotainment system malfunction.
- Do not format or root the device without authorization, as this may cause infotainment system or vehicle malfunction.
- For driving safety, it is recommended to use the infotainment system in landscape mode while driving.

CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the touchscreen:
  - Touch the screen gently. If there is no response, remove fingers from the screen, then touch it again.
  - Clean the screen with a soft cloth. Do not use any cleaning product.
- Using the touchscreen
  - When the screen temperature is low, the image displayed may be darker or the system may work slightly slower than normal.
  - The screen may be dark or difficult to see when you are wearing sunglasses. In that case, change the viewing angle or take off the sunglasses.
  - Touchscreen buttons that are grayed out cannot be operated.
- The touchscreen interface shown here is for reference only.

Infotainment System

- When the infotainment system is started for the first time, a warning message will appear. Tap **Agree** to enter the system.
- After the system starts, the home screen is displayed automatically. The home screen consists of status bar, navigation bar, and desktop widgets.
- Top status bar:

  The top status bar displays various status icons.

  These icons fall into two categories: interactive icons* that can be tapped to perform specific functions and status-only icons that display related information.
- Shortcut menu:

  Swipe down from the top of the touchscreen to open the shortcut menu. The shortcut menu includes modules for quick operations, brightness and volume adjustments, and scenario modes*.
- Navigation bar:

  Press and hold the navigation bar to open the control menu and applications*. You can customize the navigation bar according to your preferences.
  - : returns to the previous screen or exits the program.
  - : returns to the homepage.

    Tap and hold this button to switch between wallpaper and map desktops views, depending on your preference.
  - : goes to the vehicle setting screen.
  - : goes to the application list screen*.
  - : tap the button to split screen, and tap a second time to exit.
- Task management center*:

  Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen opens the task management center.
- Desktop widget*:

  The default desktop layout displays pre-installed widgets. You can add, remove, or reposition widgets based on your preferences.

REMINDER

- The first home screen widget is fixed and cannot be replaced.
- When the infotainment system malfunctions, upload the fault information in "Practical Tools".
- The loaded application is subject to the actual configuration of the vehicle.

Settings

The settings include the following modules: Bluetooth, Network & Internet, Notifications, Profiles & Accounts, Location, Privacy, Accessibility, Security, Apps, Assistant & Voice, System, and Google Account.

- Bluetooth: manages Bluetooth device pairing and connections, supporting wireless audio transmission and peripheral control.
- Network & internet: configure Wi-Fi, mobile network, VPN, and hotspot sharing to optimize network connectivity.
- Notifications: customize notification priority, display style, and Do Not Disturb mode for individual apps.
- Profiles & accounts: sync or remove account data, and manage cross-device sign-ins and cloud service permissions.
- Location: control app location permissions and view recent location access history.
- Privacy: manage app permissions, ad preferences, and access records for sensitive data such as the camera and microphone.
- Accessibility: enable assistive features such as screen readers, captions, and magnification to support special accessibility needs.
- Security: set profile lock types, enable Google Play Protect, and manage emergency security responses.
- Apps: view app storage usage, permission status, and default app settings.
- Assistant & voice: Adjust Google Assistant wake words, voice match, and smart home integration.
- System: perform system update, backup and restore operations, multi-device connectivity, and system-level power-saving strategies.
- Google Account: manage account-linked Google services such as Search, Maps, and Ads.

Trademark statement

- Google, Android, Google Play, and Google Maps are trademarks of Google LLC.

Gestures and Responses

Gestures and associated system responses are:

- Tapping: opens applications, selects functions, clicks icons on the touchscreen, or types characters.
- Dragging: touching and dragging an icon, thumbnail, or preview to the target position to change its location.
- Swiping: operational on homepage and app screens.
- Double-tapping: zooms in an image. Double-tap again to return.
- Spreading/Pinching: zooms in or out an image with two fingers.

- Swiping left/right with three fingers: regulates A/C fan speed.
- Swiping up/down with three fingers: regulates A/C temperature.
- Swiping down from the top of the touchscreen: opens the shortcut menu.
- Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen: opens the task management center.
- Sliding from the left/right of the touchscreen: returns to the last screen.

OTA Updates*

- The vehicle supports over-the-air (OTA) updates. You can update your software to the latest by tapping **Application** → → **System** → **System update**.
- When available, new updates are prompted on the infotainment touchscreen. You can update it immediately, schedule an update, or update it by mobile phone (if supported) based on your vehicle usage.

CAUTION

- Do not move the vehicle during the update.
- Before the update, ensure that the vehicle is parked safely in Park gear with a stable network connection.
- Ensure the vehicle has a high SOC before starting the update.
- Do not install any third-party devices in the OBD port before or during the update.
- Make sure the vehicle has enough battery power before the update,

CAUTION

as it cannot be charged or discharged during the process.

- During the update, vehicle functions are not available except the following: locking/unlocking with smart key or microswitch, interior lights, hazard warning light, and window controls.
- If the update fails, try again. If the retry fails, contact BYD customer service or a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for assistance.

Voice Assistant

Google Assistant*

The vehicle is equipped with Google Assistant, which uses natural language processing technology to allow intuitive and convenient control. It supports various entertainment interactions such as music and podcasts.

- When Google Assistant is set as the default voice assistant, you can activate it in three ways:
  - By saying the wake words "Hey Google".
  - By briefly pressing the steering wheel voice button.
  - By tapping the Google Assistant app icon.
- You can ask Google Assistant general questions, such as "What's on my calendar?", or interact with it to access communication, media, navigation, and vehicle control functions, such as "Read my messages", "Play some music", "Navigate home", or "Turn on the heater". Once a command is recognized, the system executes the corresponding action.

- If Google Assistant is not set as the default voice assistant, wake words and the steering wheel button cannot be used to activate it. In this case, you can either long-press the voice icon or navigate to **Application** → → **Assistant & voice** → **Digital assistant app** → **Default digital assistant app** to select the preferred default assistant.

BYD Assistant*

- BYD Assistant is an intelligent voice assistant that responds to your voice commands, such as requesting navigation, playing music/radio making phone calls, and controlling in-vehicle devices.
- When BYD Assistant is set as the default voice assistant, you can activate it by saying the wake word "Hi, BYD", by briefly pressing the voice button on the steering wheel, or by tapping on the infotainment touchscreen.
- Your voice commands can be recognized after system wake-up. Then you can give voice commands such as "Go home" (set a quick location first), "Play music", "Make a call (requires access to the contact list and connection to the phone via Bluetooth)", and "Set the temperature to 23 degrees". Once a command is recognized, the system executes the corresponding action.
- If BYD Assistant is not set as the default voice assistant, wake words and the steering wheel button cannot be used to activate it. In this case, you can either long-press the voice icon or navigate to **Application** → → **Assistant & voice** → **Digital assistant app** → **Default digital assistant app** to select the preferred default assistant.

Bluetooth

Bluetooth connection

1. On Bluetooth Call screen, tap **Please connect Bluetooth** to establish connection.
2. Tap **Available devices** to search.
3. Pair the available device, and make sure the paring code displayed on your phone is consistent with the code on the touchscreen.
4. Set Bluetooth when connection is complete.

Bluetooth call

Go to the dialing screen when Bluetooth is connected.

- Tap **Contacts**, **Call log**, and **Missed calls**, or use dial keypad to make a call.
- Slide the call card upwards or tap any empty space to minimize the dialing screen.

My Car*

- My car includes vehicle control. Vehicle control consists of shortcut control and 3D vehicle model control.
  - Shortcut control: Shortcut control can be achieved by the left shortcut bar and the shortcut function of the card entrance at the bottom.
  - 3D vehicle model control: Users can click the hot area to operate the vehicle control. The specific vehicle control function is subject to the actual configuration of the vehicle.

- Body color change: You can switch the body color by tapping the corresponding icon.
- Vehicle control customization: Users can click more to view all shortcut functions, and long press the shortcut function to drag the position.

REMINDER

- The loaded application is subject to the actual configuration of the vehicle.

Phone Projection*

Phone projection allows you to connect a smartphone to the vehicle and interact with certain mobile apps on the infotainment touchscreen.

WARNING

- Drive safely. Avoid any possible distractions, or accidents could result.

REMINDER

- Make sure the vehicle is in Park with the infotainment system turned on, and allow time to set up the phone projection app before you start your drive.
- The initial setup process is to be completed on the phone or the infotainment touchscreen: check prompts on the phone for security information, accept privacy policies, and grant necessary permissions.
- Wired connections require a connection between a certified USB cable to the USB data transfer port on the vehicle.

REMINDER

- When connecting wirelessly, pair your phone and the vehicle via Bluetooth. It is better to keep your phone's Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and Location Services turned on in this process.
- For the connection to be stable, it is better to change the vehicle hotspot name to avoid name-related issues.
- Ensure your phone is in range of your mobile data network and has an active data plan.
- Availability of services shown varies by country and language, and subscriptions for services may be required.

Apple CarPlay

Connecting with a cable*

- **To activate the connection:** Plug an iPhone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable. Apple CarPlay is then connected. The phone projected is shown on the device list.
- **To deactivate the connection:** Unplug the iPhone USB cable to stop Apple CarPlay. If you have chosen to enable wireless CarPlay, the phone and the vehicle pair automatically to allow for future wireless connections.

Connecting wirelessly*

- **To activate the connection:** Do as follows.

  1. On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the Apple CarPlay icon , and pair your iPhone to the vehicle as prompted.

2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Apple CarPlay.

- **To deactivate the connection:** Choose any of the following ways.
  - On the vehicle, turn off the vehicle hotspot.
  - Turn on vehicle Wi-Fi to let the vehicle hotspot off.
  - In the connected device list, tap **Delete** or **Disconnect** to disconnect the current device.
  - In the Bluetooth list, delete the device projected.
  - Connect the Bluetooth of the current device.
  - Turn off the vehicle.
  - On your phone, delete this CarPlay device.
  - Turn off your phone Wi-Fi.

REMINDER

- Note that stopping the current connection will not have other CarPlay devices connected automatically.

Reconnecting

- Disconnected wired Apple CarPlay will not automatically restore. You have to unplug and replug the USB cable for this purpose.
- Wireless Apple CarPlay, if abnormally disconnected, automatically try to reconnect.

Switching between Apple CarPlay and built-in infotainment system

- To exit the Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the BYD icon on Apple CarPlay's home screen.
- To access the Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the Apple CarPlay icon on the infotainment system's application screen.
- When the connected device list has only one Apple CarPlay history, tapping the icon automatically activates the connection.
- When there are multiple device histories suitable for projection, tapping the Apple CarPlay icon navigates to the device list. Select the one you want to use.

Switching between devices

- To access the connected device list, tap the connected device icon on the shortcut menu or tap **Application** → → **Network & internet** → **Connected Device**.
- Switching using the connected device list supports wireless devices only. This means you get a prompt if selecting another wireless device, but you will need to unplug and replug the USB cable to switch to a wired device.
- Connecting the USB port of the phone being connected wirelessly—which starts charging only—will not trigger the switching prompt, but connecting that of another phone will.

Possible issues

- **Checking your phone**
  - Use a phone that is in proper conditions. Apple CarPlay may often freeze on older iPhone models or earlier iOS versions.
  - A smooth cellular network is necessary. Sluggish network connections could cause apps to lag.
  - Apple CarPlay may disconnect by signal interference in a complex network environment.

- **Checking connections with the vehicle**
  - For wired connections, be sure to use the data transfer port, and preferably a MFi-certified or genuine iPhone cable.
  - For wireless connections, verify your phone settings:
    - Bluetooth has been turned on.
    - Wi-Fi has been turned on and Auto-Join of the vehicle hotspot toggled on.
    - Wireless Carplay has been selected at the very first Apple CarPlay connection. In case you do not know, navigate on your iPhone to **Settings** → **General** → **Carplay**, select the vehicle you want to reset, then tap **Forget This Car**. Delete your iPhone from the device list on the vehicle. Then reset Apple CarPlay.
  - In the event of MFi authentication chip issue or reading error, delete histories and reconnect. If the issue persist, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
  - The name of the vehicle's Bluetooth or hotspot must be unique.
    - Search on your phone for nearby Bluetooth and hotspots. Make sure that no other devices have the same name as the vehicle to prevent interference.
    - You can change the device name on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Application** → → **Bluetooth** or **Network & internet**.
  - Make sure Siri is on.
  - Make sure Apple CarPlay is not restricted.

    If your iPhone is not detected by Apple CarPlay, navigate on the phone to **Settings** → **Screen Time** → **Content & Privacy Restrictions**. If **Content & Privacy Restrictions** is on, tap **Allowed Apps & Features** to make sure that Apple CarPlay is enabled.
  - If Apple CarPlay is disconnected by turning the vehicle hotspot off, wireless reconnection cannot be performed within 10 minutes. Try after that.
  - You can restart by forgetting history settings:

    On your iPhone, navigate to **Settings** → **General** → **Carplay**, select the vehicle you want to reset, then tap **Forget This Car**. In the meantime, delete this phone from the vehicle's device list.
  - If the wireless connection fails after you end a wired connection by unplugging the USB cable, clear CarPlay device information on your iPhone or restart the phone.
- For available regions of Apple CarPlay, visit https://www.apple.com/ios/feature-availability/#apple-carplay.

Android Auto

Connecting with a cable

- **To activate the connection:** Plug an Android Auto-compatible phone to one of the vehicle's USB data transfer ports with a certified USB cable and set up as prompted.
- **To deactivate the connection:** Unplug the USB cable or. Alternatively, you can end the connection or delete the projected phone in **Connected Devices**.

1. Plug a smartphone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable.
2. Follow the on-screen instructions to set up Android Auto.

Connecting wirelessly

- **To activate the connection:** Do as follows.
  1. Go to infotainment touchscreen → application screen, tap the Android Auto icon , and pair your smartphone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Android Auto.
- **To deactivate the connection:** Choose any of the following ways.
  - On the vehicle, turn off the vehicle hotspot.
  - Turn on vehicle Wi-Fi to let the vehicle hotspot off.
  - In the connected device list, tap **Delete** or **Disconnect** to disconnect the current device.
  - In the Bluetooth list, delete the device projected.
  - Turning Bluetooth on the vehicle or Wi-Fi on the phone off may stop projection.
  - Turn off the vehicle.
  - On your phone, delete this Android Auto device.

Reconnecting

- Disconnected wired Android Auto will not automatically restore. You have to unplug and replug the USB cable for this purpose.
- Wireless Android Auto, if abnormally disconnected, automatically try to reconnect.

Switching between Android Auto and built-in infotainment system

- To exit Android Auto user interface, tap on Android Auto interface.
- To access Android Auto user interface, tap the Android Auto icon on the infotainment system's application screen.
- When the connected device list has only one Android Auto history, tapping the icon automatically activates the connection. Connection prompts will be given if projection conditions are not met.
- When there are multiple device histories suitable for projection, tapping the Android Auto icon navigates to the device list. Select the one you want to use.

Switching between devices

- You can switch between wireless Android Auto devices in the connected device list and get a switching prompt after selecting another device.
- However, this step does not work for switching to a wired device, which requires unplugging and replugging the USB cable.
- Connecting the USB port of the phone being connected wirelessly—which starts charging only—will not trigger the switching prompt, but connecting that of another phone will.

Possible issues

- **Android Auto not working**
  - Make sure your phone supports Google service.

- Check if the phone operation system supports Android Auto.
  - Common Android Auto compatible devices are Android phones running Android 11.0 or later versions. Consult your phone maker for compatibility.
  - Android Auto is not supported on phones running Android (Go edition).
- Verify that your phones has the latest version of Android Auto app.
  - Search for Android Auto in phone Settings, then go to the Android Auto screen to view the version.
  - If Android Auto cannot be found, search for it in Google Play to download or update.
- Check if the connection between your phone and the vehicle is working normally.
  - For wired connections, use a good USB cable to connect the phone and the data transfer port.
  - For wireless connections, make sure Bluetooth and Wi-Fi are enabled on your phone and so do the vehicle Bluetooth and hotspot.

- **Unable to reconnect Android Auto**

  Try the following steps:

  - If you are using a wired connection, change to a genuine USB cable of the phone.
  - For a wireless reconnection, change the vehicle hotspot name (→ → **Network & internet**) or turn off the Bluetooth and Wi-Fi on the phone and the vehicle, then turn them back on.
  - Restart your phone and the vehicle infotainment system.
  - Delete and reconnect your phone as follows:

    1. Forget previously connected devices on the phone: Go to your Android phone's settings, then navigate to or search for Android Auto settings (on Google phones for example, **Settings** → **Connected devices** → **Connection preferences** → **Android Auto**).
    2. Tap **Previously connected cars**, then the three-dot menu button, and select **Forget all cars**.
    3. On the vehicle infotainment touchscreen, go to → **Network & internet**→ **Connected Device**, and then delete the device you want.
    4. Delete your phone from **Bluetooth Settings**.
    5. Reactivate the connection between the phone and the vehicle.

- **Causes to unstable Android Auto connections**
  - For wired Android Auto, typical causes are:
    - Unstable data transmission due to low-quality USB cable
    - Data transmission failure of USB port on the side of the vehicle
    - Data transmission failure of USB port on the side of the phone
    - Unstable connections due to BC1.2 incompatibility of the vehicle USB port
    - Unstable connections due to an old version of Android Auto on the phone
    - Strong vehicle vibration caused by rugged roads

- For wireless Android Auto, they include:
  - Hotspot turned off on the vehicle or Wi-Fi off on the phone
  - Complex network environments or weak signals (for example, when multiple Wi-Fi transmitters are operating simultaneously, frequency interference may occur with the vehicle hotspot).
  - Poor cellular reception (for example, in a basement or mountainous area)
  - Too old version of Android Auto on the phone (the latest version recommend)
  - Multiple BYD vehicles nearby with identical hotspot names
  - Faulty or malfunctioning Bluetooth or Wi-Fi module on the phone or the vehicle
- **Apps not available on Android Auto**
  - Not all apps on your phone are compatible with Android Auto, so some of them may not be displayed on the user interface.
  - Mobile network influences app presence or usage on Android Auto. Some apps cannot be opened without mobile network connections.
  - Given the feature or permission differences of apps between Android Auto and the phone, please consult the app providers if you have questions on app usage.

REMINDER

- Android Auto is integrated into phones with Android 10 and above. You do not need to download it.

REMINDER

- For wired or wireless connection, your phone might ask you to update Android Auto before you continue.
- Android Auto connections require the use of Bluetooth on both your phone and the vehicle, which could disconnect other already connected Bluetooth devices.
- Wireless Android Auto connections reply on the use of Wi-Fi on your phone, which could interrupt Wi-Fi connections on your phone.
- Wireless Android Auto connections reply on the use of vehicle hotspot, which could interrupt Wi-Fi connections on the vehicle. If Wi-Fi remains needed, turn on Wi-Fi again and try to reconnect it. (Performance may vary across systems.)
- For Android Auto compatibility, visit Google website: http://www.android.com/auto/

Trademark statement

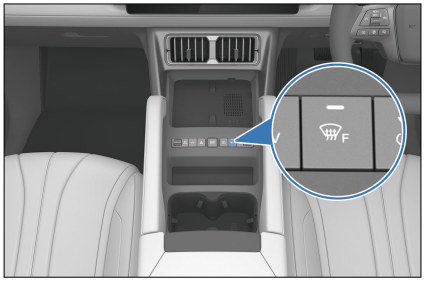
- Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

A/C System

A/C Panel

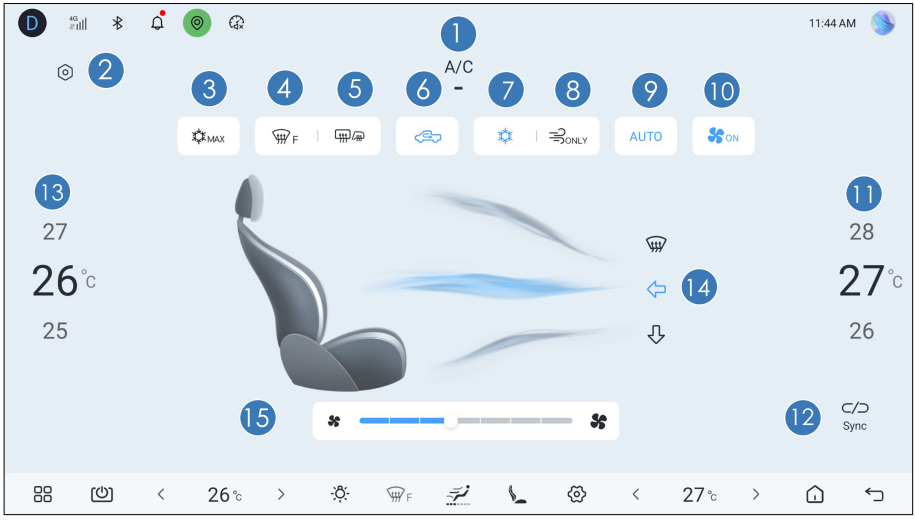
Front A/C Panel

Front windshield defroster



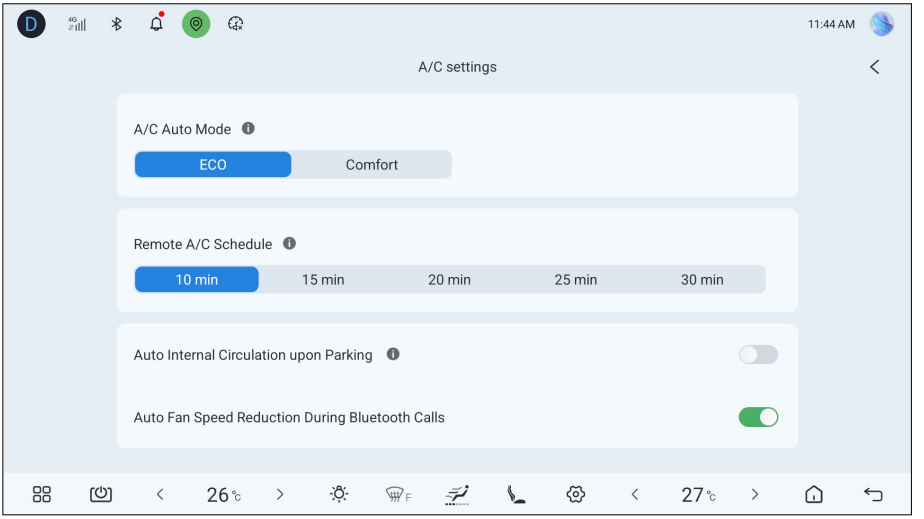
A/C Operation Interface

Front A/C Operation Interface



1	A/C operation interface
2	A/C setting
3	Max cooling
4	Windshield Defroster
5	Defroster for rear window and side mirrors
6	Circulation mode
7	Cooling
8	Ventilation
9	Auto mode
10	A/C ON/OFF
11	Driver's temperature control
12	Synchronization
13	Front passenger's temperature control
14	Air distribution
15	Fan speed control

A/C Settings



A/C Auto Mode

- Provides two options: **Eco** and **Comfort**.

Remote A/C Schedule

- Sets the time for remote A/C running.

Auto Internal Circulation upon Parking

- Tap this button to enable this setting.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.

Auto fan speed reduction during Bluetooth calls

- Tap this button to enable this setting.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.

Function Definition

A/C ON/OFF

- Tap this button to disable the A/C if it is ON.
- Tap this button to enable the A/C if it is OFF.

Auto mode

- After tapping this button, its indicator lights up on the front A/C panel, and compressor status, fan speed and air distribution can be adjusted automatically.
- The vehicle exits auto control if fan speed or air distribution is set, and other functions remain in auto mode except for those that have been operated.

Cooling

- Tap this button for cooling.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.

Circulation mode

- Tap this button to switch to recirculation mode.
- Tap this button for the second time to switch to fresh air mode.

Ventilation

- Tap this button to activate A/C ventilation control. The outlet air is natural air.
- Tap this button again to exit.

Front windshield defroster

- Tap this button to enter the front windshield defrost mode, distributing air to the front windshield. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel lights up.
- Tap this button again to deactivate and exit the front windshield defroster control mode. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel turns off.

Defroster for rear windshield and side mirrors

- Tap this button, and the heating panel of side mirrors will quickly clear the mirrors. The function is automatically deactivated after 15-minute inactivity of the associated button.
- Tap this button a second time to disable the function.
- This function is not to be used to dry raindrops or melt snow.

WARNING

- Do not touch the side mirrors when the rear defroster is activated, because their surfaces will be hot.

CAUTION

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windshield, take care not to scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

REMINDER

- Using the side mirror electric heating defrosting function for a long time may cause the mirror to wear out faster. Turn off the defrost button when it is not needed.

Max cooling

- Tap this button to switch the A/C to the maximum cooling control mode. The temperature is set to "Lo", the fan speed is set to the maximum, the recirculation mode is activated, and air is directed to face level.
- Tap this button again to exit.

Temperature control

- Tap the upside arrow or slide it down to increase the temperature. Tap the downside arrow or slide it up to lower the temperature.
- When the temperature is set to the lowest, "Lo" is displayed. When it is set to the highest, "Hi" is displayed.

Air distribution

- Tap an icon on the infotainment touchscreen to select the corresponding air distribution mode.
- You can turn on multiple air distribution modes at a time (up to three).
- Adjustments can be made according to the air supply illustration.

Face-level vent: Air flows to the face level.

Foot-level vent: Air flows to the foot level.

Defroster mode: Air flows to the front windshield and side windows.

Fan speed control

- Tap the chosen position. The more bars illuminated, the faster the fan speed.

Sync/Independent control

- Tap this button to control the A/C of the driver's seat and the front passenger's seat independently.
- Tap a second time to turn off the independent control.

Usage Precautions

- To quickly cool down the interior after long exposure to sunlight, drive for a few minutes with the windows open to exhaust hot air and speed up A/C cooling.
- To speed up cooling, adjust the temperature to "Lo" and use the recirculation mode for a few minutes.
- To cool down quickly, activate the maximum cooling control mode to enable the best A/C cooling state. This makes the interior environment comfortable quickly.
- If the A/C effect does not achieve expectations, it is recommended to activate auto mode. In this mode, A/C adjusts to the appropriate ventilation temperature, mode and fan speed for comfort needs of passengers.
- Make sure that the air intake grille in front of the windshield is not blocked (for example, by leafs or snow).
- Avoid blowing cool air onto the windshield in humid weather. The inner and outer temperature difference can cause glass fogging.
- It is recommended to keep the space under the front seats clear to improve air circulation.
- In cold weather, run the fan at high speed for one minute to remove snow or moisture from the intake passage, which helps reduce fogging.
- Use recirculation mode for a few minutes for cabin quick heating in cold weather, and switch to fresh air mode to prevent fogging after cabin is heated up.
- In dusty or windy conditions, close all windows, switch on the recirculation mode, and turn on the A/C.
- In heating mode, press the compressor control button to light it up (the compressor is turned on), which can reduce airflow moisture.
- In the ventilation mode, the system introduces the natural wind from outside, which is suitable for spring and autumn.

REMINDER

- A/C odor:
  - It is normal that there may be a damp and moldy smell just after the A/C is turned on. During the operation of the automobile A/C, A/C condensation often remains in the evaporator, and the wet evaporator can easily absorb unfiltered body sweat, smokes, etc., inside the vehicle, resulting in mold on the surface of the wet evaporator surface and odor after long-term fermentation.
- How to prevent and reduce A/C odors:
  - Turn off the A/C and ventilate with natural air before parking to keep the air inside the vehicle relatively dry.
  - Inspect, clean, or replace the filter regularly.

REMINDER

- Try to keep the cabin clean and fresh.
- If the odor does not reduce after the above operations, it is recommended to repair it in time.
- In order to reduce odors from the A/C, if the A/C is already turned on, it is normal that the A/C blower may keep running for a while after the vehicle is powered off and locked. No need to worry about it. This is to dry the condensed water on the surface of the evaporator to prevent odor caused by mold fermentation.

Vents

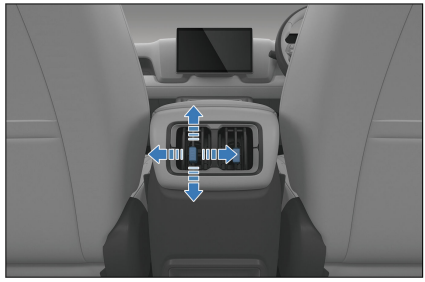
Front Vents

- Turn the vent stick to adjust airflow or to open/close the vent.
- Use the vent stick to adjust the outlet angle.



Rear Center Vent

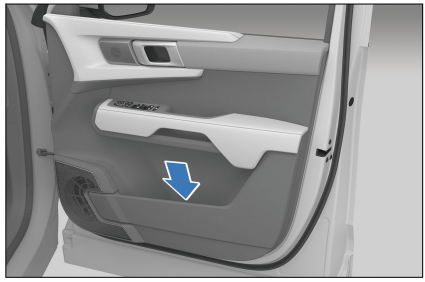
- Turn the vent stick to adjust airflow or to open/close the vent.
- Use the vent stick to adjust the outlet angle.



Storage

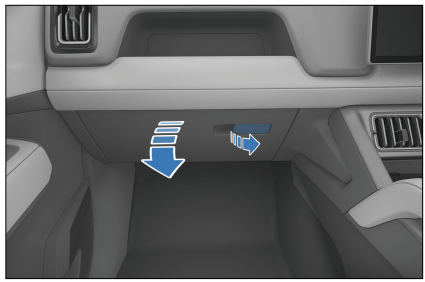
Door Bin

- There is a door bin on each door for storage of beverage bottles or small items.



Glove Box

- Pull the handle to open the glove box.
- Push the lid up to close it.



REMINDER

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the glove box closed while driving.

Center Console Cubby

- Located between the front seats, open the cover to use.



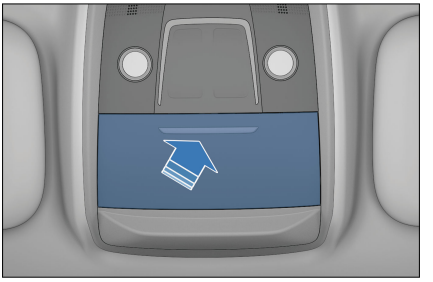
Seatback Pockets

- There are seatback pockets at the back of the front seats for magazines and newspapers. (The seatback pockets on your actual vehicle may differ.)



Glasses Case

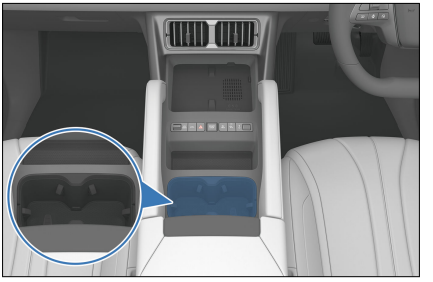
- Press the lid of the case to open it.



Cup Holder

Front Seat Cup Holder

- The front seat cup holder is located in front of the center console cubby.



Rear Seat Cup Holder

- Flip the rear seat armrest to use the cup holder.



WARNING

- Be cautious when placing hot drinks to avoid burns. Meanwhille, do not start or brake the vehicle suddenly to prevent spillage or scalding.
- Do not place rigid or hard containers such as glass or ceramic cups in the cup holder. In the event of an accident or sudden braking, such items may be thrown out and cause personal injury.

CAUTION

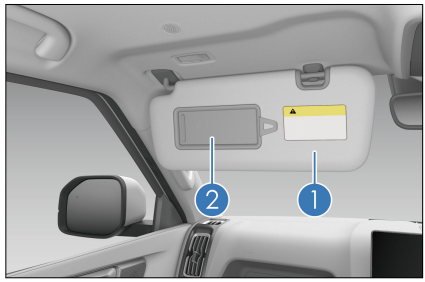
- The cup may not fit into the cup holder due to its size or shape.
- Before driving, stow away cups or other items in the front cup holders that may obstruct the driver's view.
- Do not start or brake the vehicle suddenly when the cup holders are being used to prevent spillage or scalding.
- Do not place an open cup or loose beverage bottle in the cup holder, so as to avoid liquid spillage while you are driving, opening or closing a door.
- To ensure safe driving, the driver is strictly prohibited from taking the cup out or placing it in the cup holder while driving.

Other Devices

Sun Visor

① Sun visor

- To block sunlight from the front, pull the sun visor down.
- To block sunlight from a side, remove the swivel sleeve from the fixed support and turn the visor towards the side window.



② Vanity mirror

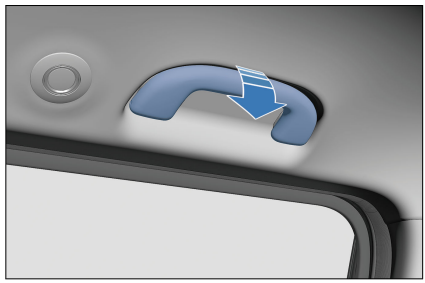
- Flip down the sun visor and slide the mirror cover for use.

REMINDER

- Correct use of the sun visor improves driving safety and comfort.

Grab Handles

Pull the safety handle down for use. Simply let go and allow it to return to its default position.



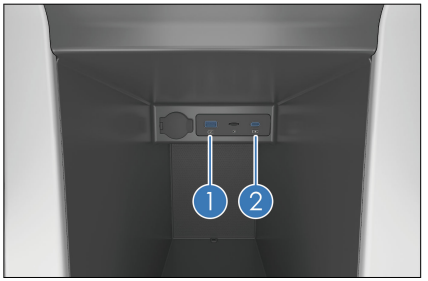
USB Ports

Front-Row USB Ports

- The front USB ports are located in the center console cubby.

  ① Type-A data transmission/charge port

  ② Type-C charge port



- The power outlet can be used only when the ignition is on.
- The infotainment system is compatible with USB storage devices up to 128GB. It is not compatible with some USB devices on the market.

CAUTION

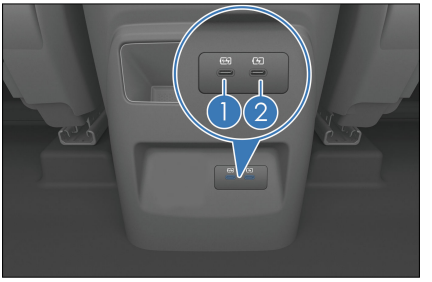
- It is recommended to use a USB storage device up to 128GB with a partition format of FAT32.
- Do not use substandard or special USB storage devices to avoid damaging the infotainment system or data in the USB device.

Rear-Row USB Ports

- The rear USB ports are located behind the center console cubby.

① Type-A charge port

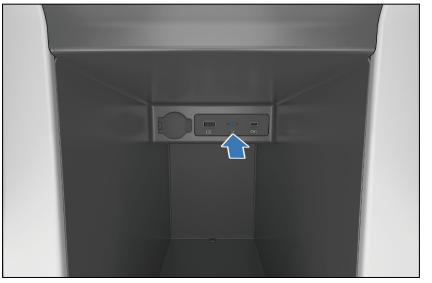
② Type-C fast charge port



- The power outlet can be used only when the ignition is on.

SD Card Slot

- An SD card slot is located in the center console cubby.
- The infotainment system is compatible with TF cards (also called Micro-SD cards) up to 128GB and at least Class 10.



CAUTION

- Insert the card correctly.
- Incompatible TF cards may result in failure to write and save files.
- TF cards with non-FAT32 partition format need to be converted into FAT32 format before first use, otherwise the system may fail to recognize them.
- Before removing the TF card, write files or shut down the

CAUTION

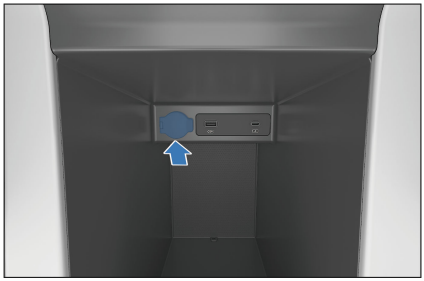
infotainment system, or video files may be damaged.

On-board Power Supply

- The standby power supply can be used for accessories with a working current of less than 10 A and electrical power of less than 120 W.
- The 12V auxiliary power supplies power to vehicle accessories.
- The 12V auxiliary power is available only when the ignition is on. Lift the cover to use it.

Front 12V Power Outlet

- It is located in the center console cubby.



CAUTION

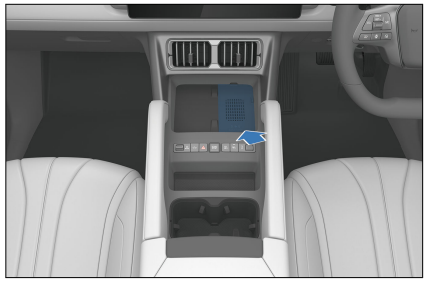
- To prevent fuses from blowing, the power consumption must not exceed 12V/120W of total vehicle load.
- To prevent draining the low-voltage battery, do not use the 12V auxiliary power supply for a long time when the engine is not running.

CAUTION

- When the 12V auxiliary power is not in use, close its cover. Do not insert any object other than a suitable plug into the 12V auxiliary power socket or let any liquid ingress the socket, as electrical failure may occur.

Wireless Phone Charger*

- The mobile phone wireless charging area is located on the center console. To activate/deactivate wireless charging, tap the wireless charging icon on the shortcut page after sliding down the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen.
- After starting the vehicle, put the phone on the non-slip rubber pad in the wireless charger area with the phone screen facing up. The phone automatically begins wireless charging, and a charging icon is displayed on the infotainment screen.



- Wireless phone charging uses a coil to transmit electrical energy to a phone battery through electromagnetic wave induction so that the phone can be charged without a cable connection.

CAUTION

- Ensure your smart key is more than 25 cm away from the wireless charger area when the wireless charger system is working.
- To avoid wireless charger dysfunction or even accidents, do not place coins, metal keys, metal rings, or other articles containing metal in the wireless charger area together with the phone.
- To avoid damage to the charger area, do not place heavy objects on it.
- If the phone wireless charger system is faulty and does not work properly, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- BYD will not assume any responsibility for any problems caused by improper use. If the product is disassembled or modified, the free warranty will be terminated.
- For safety reasons, do not leave an unattended phone being charged in the vehicle.
- For safety reasons, refrain from checking phone charging status for a long time while driving.
- If a metal item is found between the device and the charger rubber pad during charging, do not remove the metal item with bare hands to prevent burning.
- For better charging, the center of the phone coil must be aligned with the center of wireless charger (indicated with text in the charger area), or charging may fail.

CAUTION

- Prevent any fluid from coming into contact with the charger area, or the wireless charger will malfunction.
- Charging may stop at high temperatures, and will resume once the temperature drops.
- BYD makes no commitments for problems caused by external wireless charging coils. Please use with caution.
- The wireless phone charger system can charge Qi-certified phones, and non-Qi-certified phones are not guaranteed for normal charging.
- To avoid burning cards with chips, such as bank cards, do not place them between the phone case and the phone during charging.

REMINDER

- Only one phone can be charged at a time.
- A phone case that is too thick may prevent charging.
- On bumpy roads, the wireless phone charger may intermittently stop and then resume.
- Try to ensure that the surface on which a mobile phone is placed is parallel to the charging module. If the phone moves from the wireless charger area and stops charging, move it back.
- If the phone cannot be charged properly, ensure that there are no foreign objects in the wireless charger area, or wait for the wireless charger area to cool

REMINDER

down before trying again. If it is still impossible to charge the phone, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- After power-off, if the phone is still charging and the driver's door is opened, the instrument cluster sounds an alarm and the message "Please take your cell phone with you" is displayed for five seconds.
- The setting icon for wireless phone charger can be added or removed on the shortcut page of the infotainment touchscreen.
- The wireless phone charging function only works with Qi-certified phones.
- For the purpose of compatibility, the in-vehicle wireless fast charging module may be slower than the original charger provided by your phone’ s manufacturer.
- The wireless fast charging power of your phone depends on that supported by the phone, while the in-vehicle fast charging* only supports up to 50 W.
- Certain phones may carry outdated charging programs that are not capable of fast charging.

06 MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Information..... 224
Regular Maintenance.....237
Self-Maintenance.....243

Maintenance Information

Maintenance Cycle and Items

Maintenance Plan

- The maintenance plan is designed to ensure stable driving, failure reduction, safe and economical driving.
- The maintenance schedule lists all the maintenance items that are necessary to keep the vehicle in optimum condition at all times.
- The items in the maintenance schedule are important and need to be maintained according to the time interval.
- Hoses with any degradation or damage should be replaced immediately. Rubber hoses (for systems such as A/C, heating, and braking systems) must be checked by professional technicians according to the maintenance schedule.

Maintenance Schedule (BYD487ZQF)

- **First maintenance:**
  - The vehicle must be maintained at six months or 3,500 km (HEV mileage), whichever comes first.
  - First maintenance items include vehicle basic maintenance, replacement of engine oil and oil filter, and check of engine idle speed and crankcase ventilation system.
- **Routine maintenance:**
  - Routine maintenance include vehicle basic maintenance, maintenance of other items, and engine maintenance.

Vehicle basic maintenance:

After the first maintenance, carry out the basic maintenance according to the following maintenance interval and mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Cooling pipe damage and connecting part tightness	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Brake friction block and disc	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Brake pedal and EPB switch	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Brake piping and hoses	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Drive shaft boot	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Ball pin and boot	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Front and rear suspensions	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Front and rear wheel alignment	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Tire (including spare tire) wear (such as tread depth and wear patterns)	Check during maintenance. In severe driving conditions, check more frequently

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
	and rotate tires or perform wheel alignment when necessary.
Wheel bearing clearance	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Spare tire looseness	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Check the door brakes (remove the dust from the lever with a damp soft cloth and apply 0.3–0.8 g of grease to the lever, riveting joint, and rotating shaft)	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Hood lock and fasteners	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Coolant level in expansion tank	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Brake fluid	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Vehicle module DTCs (to be cleared after recording)	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
High-voltage battery tray, crash bar, shield, crash valve*, thermal insulation cotton*, and mounting torque	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Powertrain leaks or bumps	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Fasteners of the high-voltage distribution box, DC charging distribution box, and similar parts	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.
Loose high-voltage wiring harnesses or connectors and connector pin ablation	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.
Deformation of or oil/fluid stains on the high-voltage module	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.
Foreign materials on or ablation of charging connector interface	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.
Wading marks on high-voltage parts	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Vehicle module software update (update if any)	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Initial down tilt of low beam	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
HEPA filter*	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km. In case of harsh environment or reduced air outlet, check in time and replace the A/C filter when necessary.
Lock nut torque of wiper arm	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Vehicle glass glue attachment	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
The fastening of door locks and lock bolts	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Electric fan*	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Loose cooling fan grounding and connectors	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Fuse box and domain controller power terminal connection looseness	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Damage of connectors inside and outside the hood	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Steering wheel and tie rod	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Foreign materials on or ablation of the EPS GND point	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
EPS connector looseness and connector pin ablation	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
EPS ECU corrosion	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Lamp and LED lighting	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Headlight dimming	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Steering shaft lock*	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Electric horn	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Air leakage of exhaust pipe joint	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Bumps on the appearance of the three-way catalytic converter	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Fuel tank cap, fuel lines and connections	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Charcoal canister	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance

Maintenance of other items:

Comply with the following maintenance interval and mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Engine coolant and drive motor coolant	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every four years or 100,000 km.
Brake fluid	Check during maintenance and replace every two years or 40,000 km
Front and rear drive gear oil	Check and replace the oil every four years or 60,000 km, whichever comes first.
Front drive differential gear oil	Replace at 18 months or 23,500 km for the first time; check and replace with the maintenance time of front and rear drive gear oil afterwards
Transmission filter element	Replace the filter (press filter) element every four years or 60,000 km
Spare tire lifter	Retorque every two years or 40,000 km during routine maintenance

Engine maintenance mileage (model: BYD487ZQF):

BYD487ZQF engine maintenance should comply with the following maintenance interval and mileage (HEV mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Engine oil and oil filter	Replace every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Crankcase ventilation system (PCV valve and ventilation hose)	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance
Engine idle speed	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance
Spark plug	Replace at 30 months or 23,500 km for the first time, and every 36 months or 30,000 km afterwards
Fuel filter (non-integrated)	Check and replace at 18 months or 13,500 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Air filter element	Replace at 18 months or 13,500 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 20,000 km afterwards; Check under severe conditions of use and replace in advance if necessary
Dust filter of charcoal canister*	In the event of abnormal fuel gun shut-off, check the charcoal canister dust filter for blockage and replace it if necessary

REMINDER

- To keep the high-voltage battery in optimal condition, please fully charge and discharge the vehicle regularly (at least every six months or 72,000 km) for battery self-calibration. You can also contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for capacity testing and calibration.
- In following bad working conditions, it is recommended to shorten the routine mileage interval based on the actual situations to protect the vehicle. The vehicle travels at low temperatures (ambient temperature <5°C) with short continuous driving time (<15 min) in HEV mode or often creeps (vehicle speed <10 km/h) for a long time.

Note:

- The maintenance intervals in the table are calculated starting from the purchase date.
- To keep the vehicle in the optimum state, follow the instructions below to operate the vehicle correctly.
  - Before the first maintenance, break in the vehicle in ECO mode with the use ratio of HEV mode not less than 50%.
  - After the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 10%.
- The replacement time interval of the oil filter can be shortened according to the degree of fouling of the gasoline engine.
- Severe driving conditions refer to:
  - Frequent driving in dusty areas or frequent exposure to salt-laden air.

- Frequent driving on bumpy, puddled, or mountain roads.
- Driving in cold weather.
- Frequent and sudden braking.
- Frequent use of a towed trailer.
- Used as a taxi.
- Driving in congested urban areas at temperatures above 32°C for more than 50% of total travel time.
- Driving at speeds over 120 km/h at temperatures above 30°C for more than 50% of total travel time
- Frequent overloading.

Maintenance Schedule (BYD476ZQF)

- **First maintenance:**
  - The vehicle must be maintained at six months or 3,500 km (HEV mileage), whichever comes first.
  - First maintenance items include vehicle basic maintenance, replacement of engine oil and oil filter, and check of engine idle speed and crankcase ventilation system.
- **Routine maintenance:**
  - Routine maintenance include vehicle basic maintenance, maintenance of other items, and engine maintenance.

Vehicle basic maintenance:

After the first maintenance, carry out the basic maintenance according to the following maintenance interval and mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Cooling pipe damage and connecting part tightness	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Brake friction block and disc	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Brake pedal and EPB switch	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Brake piping and hoses	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Steering wheel and tie rod	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Drive shaft boot	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Ball pin and boot	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Front and rear suspensions	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Tire (including spare tire*) wear (such as tread depth and wear patterns)	Check during maintenance. In severe driving conditions, check more frequently and rotate tires or perform wheel alignment when necessary.
Wheel bearing clearance	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Spare tire looseness	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Foreign materials on or ablation of the EPS GND point	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
EPS connector looseness and connector pin ablation	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
EPS ECU corrosion	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Check the door brakes. Remove the dust from the lever with a damp soft cloth, and apply 0.3–0.8 g of grease to the lever, riveting joint, and rotating shaft	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Hood lock and fasteners	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Coolant level in expansion tank	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Brake fluid	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Vehicle module DTCs (to be cleared after recording)	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
High-voltage battery tray, crash bar, shield, crash valve*, thermal insulation cotton*, and mounting torque	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Powertrain leaks or bumps	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Fasteners of the high-voltage distribution box, DC charging distribution box, and similar parts	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.
Loose high-voltage wiring harnesses or connectors and connector pin ablation	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.
Deformation of or oil/fluid stains on the high-voltage module	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.
Foreign materials on or ablation of charging connector interface	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.
Wading marks on high-voltage parts	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance, and increase the inspection frequency under special working conditions or severe working condition.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Vehicle module software update (update if any)	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Lamp and LED lighting	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Headlight dimming	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Initial down tilt of low beam	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
HEPA filter*	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance. In case of harsh environment or reduced air outlet, it is recommended to check and replace the A/C filter in time.
Lock nut torque of wiper arm	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Vehicle glass glue attachment	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
The fastening of door locks and lock bolts	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Electric fan*	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Loose cooling fan grounding and connectors	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Fuse box and domain controller power terminal connection looseness	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Damage of connectors inside and outside the hood	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km.
Steering shaft lock*	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Electric horn	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Air leakage of exhaust pipe joint	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Bumps on the appearance of the three-way catalytic converter	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Fuel tank cap, fuel lines and connections	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Charcoal canister	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance

Maintenance of other items: Comply with the following maintenance interval and mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Engine coolant and drive motor coolant	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every four years or 100,000 km.
Brake fluid	Check during maintenance and replace every two years or 40,000 km
Front and rear drive gear oil	Check and replace the oil every four years or 60,000 km, whichever comes first.
Front drive differential gear oil	Replace at 18 months or 23,500 km for the first time; check and replace with the maintenance time of front and rear drive gear oil afterwards
Transmission filter element	Replace the filter (press filter) element every four years or 60,000 km
Longitudinal EHS differential vent plug	Check after severe driving conditions
Spare tire lifter	Retorque every two years or 40,000 km during routine maintenance

Engine maintenance mileage:

Engine maintenance should comply with the following maintenance interval and mileage (HEV mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Engine oil and oil filter	Replace every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance
Crankcase ventilation system (PCV valve and ventilation hose)	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance
Engine idle speed	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance
Spark plug	Replace at 42 months or 33,500 km for the first time, and every 48 months or 40,000 km afterwards
Fuel filter (non-integrated)	Check and replace at 18 months or 13,500 km for the first time, and replace every 24 months or 20,000 km afterwards
Air filter element	Replace at 18 months or 13,500 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 20,000 km afterwards; Check under severe

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
	conditions of use and replace in advance if necessary
Dust filter of charcoal canister	Replace every two years or 30,000 km, or upon frequent fuel gun auto shut-off during refueling

REMINDER

- A bottle (180 mL/bottle) of gasoline detergent should be added for the turbocharged engine each time after the first maintenance.*
- Add gasoline detergent first and then fill up the fuel tank. Do not refuel or add gasoline detergent before the refueling prompt displays on the instrument cluster or the fuel indicator turns yellow.*
- To keep the high-voltage battery in optimal condition, please fully charge and discharge the vehicle regularly (at least every six months or 72,000 km) for battery self-calibration. You can also contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for capacity testing and calibration.
- In following bad working conditions, it is recommended to shorten the routine mileage interval based on the actual situations to protect the vehicle.
  - The vehicle travels at low temperatures (ambient temperature <5°C) with short continuous driving time (<15 min) in HEV mode or often creeps (vehicle speed <10 km/h) for a long time.

Note:

- The maintenance intervals in the table are calculated starting from the purchase date.
- To keep the vehicle in the optimum state, follow the instructions below to operate the vehicle correctly.
  - Before the first maintenance, break in the vehicle in ECO mode with the use ratio of HEV mode not less than 50%.
  - After the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 10%.
- The replacement time interval of the oil filter can be shortened according to the degree of fouling of the gasoline engine.
- Severe driving conditions refer to:
  - Frequent driving in dusty areas or frequent exposure to salt-laden air.
  - Frequent driving on bumpy, puddled, or mountain roads.
  - Driving in cold weather.
  - Frequent and sudden braking.
  - Frequent use of a towed trailer.
  - Used as a taxi.
  - Driving in congested urban areas at temperatures above 32°C for more than 50% of total travel time
  - Driving at speeds over 120 km/h at temperatures above 30°C for more than 50% of total travel time

- Frequent overloading.

Maintenance for Special Working Conditions

- Special working conditions include general severe working conditions and off-road working conditions. After driving under special working conditions, you can check the following items by yourself. If there is any abnormality, please contact the BYD authorized dealer or service provider in time.

Checks Item	Inspection method
Wheel assembly	Rim: After each off-road driving on muddy terrain, thoroughly clean the bottom of the wheel rims, groove structures, or other hard-to-reach areas where mud tends to accumulate. Wheels: Clean mud or pebbles accumulated on the tire surfaces, and check for tire wear.
Exhaust line connection	Check for leaks, loose fastenings, and damage.
Side door handles	Clean the vehicle handles using a vacuum cleaner and rinse them with clean water, paying special attention to areas where mud and dirt residues tend to accumulate.
Side door and rear-end door locks	Clean locks with a vacuum cleaner, paying particular attention to the areas where mud and dirt residues tend to accumulate.
Woofer	Listen to each speaker to check if it sounds normally.
Engine sound simulator	1. Check for water ingress. 2. Drive slowly and listen to verify whether the sound of the engine sound simulator is normal.
Panoramic camera Other cameras	1. Check the camera body for bumps and deformations; Check the lens for scratches, cracks, dirt blockings, etc. 2. Check whether the panoramic picture is displayed normally, whether there is a black screen, whether the image is deformed, etc.
Front mmWave radars Corner mmWave radars	1. Check the mmWave radar surfaces and bumper areas for dents, scratches, or deformation.

Checks Item	Inspection method
	2. Check the radar surfaces for dust and mud. 3. Check whether the instrument alarms. 4. Check whether the radars function normally.
Ultrasonic radar probe	1. Check the probe surface for damages such as scratches and dents. 2. Check whether the probe functions normally.
Air filter assembly and air intake pipelines	1. After off-road driving, carrying out maintenance inspection on the same day. The air filter and related pipings should be checked for any water ingress. 2. Check for sand and snow ingress and clean it promptly. 3. Replace the air filter element in advance if needed based on inspection results. Otherwise, engine damage may occur. It is recommended to have maintenance performed at an authorized dealer or service provider and use a vacuum cleaner to remove sand.

General severe working conditions

- Maintenance should be observed and performed more frequently in general severe service conditions. In case of frequent driving under the following severe working conditions, it is recommended that you contact the BYD authorized dealer or service provider at least once every three months for maintenance.
- General severe working conditions include (but are not limited to) the following:
  - Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
  - Driving on rough/muddy roads.
  - Driving in mountainous conditions.
  - Driving in waterlogged or snow-covered road conditions.
  - Driving with a trailer
- The maintenance items under general severe working conditions are as follows:

Maintenance Item	Execution Working Condition
Check the air filter element	General severe working conditions

Maintenance Item	Execution Working Condition
Check the front, rear, left, right, upper and lower swing arm assemblies.	General severe working conditions
Check longitudinal EHS differential vent plug	General severe working conditions
Check the stabilizer bar assembly	General severe working conditions
Check the front/middle/rear bottom guard assembly	General severe working conditions
Check and replace hydraulic suspension fluid	General severe working conditions
Check the drive halfshaft	General severe working conditions
Check the brake assembly	General severe working conditions
Movable guide block and its bolts, and fixed guide block and its bolts on the rear-end door	General severe working conditions
Check the rear-end door lock, lock ring and bolt	General severe working conditions
Check whether sand enters the turbocharger	Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
Check whether sand enters the oil dipstick	Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
Check the radiator, condenser, oil cooler, intercooler and fan	Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
Replace the air conditioner filter element.	Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
Check the engine inlet valve	Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
Check the air conditioning inlet valve	Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
Insulation detection	Driving on rough, muddy or mountainous roads.
Potential detection	General severe working conditions
Checks tire pressure sensor	Driving on rough, muddy or mountainous roads.
Check radiator for muds and pebbles and clean as necessary.	Driving on rough, muddy or mountainous roads.

Maintenance Item	Execution Working Condition
Torque of connector and DC positive fastener of bidirectional on-board power supply assembly	Driving on rough, muddy or mountainous roads.
Replace the oil filter.	Driving in dusty or sandy conditions, or towing a trailer
Check the steering gear assembly	Driving on rough, muddy or mountainous roads, or towing a trailer.
Check the trailer hitch assembly	Driving with a trailer

Note: The actual maintenance items may be slightly different from those in the above table due to the severity of working conditions, and the details shall be subject to the notification of BYD authorized dealer or service provider before maintenance.

Off-road conditions

- Off-road working conditions are more severe than general bad working conditions, and the requirements for the state of the vehicle are higher. If you need to drive off-road, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider before and after off-road to conduct a comprehensive inspection of your vehicle, so as to find problems immediately and keep your car in the best condition.

Regular Maintenance

Regular Maintenance

- Be sure to maintain the vehicle as per the maintenance schedule to allow it serve in the best working efficiency and reduce fault occurrence.
- Drivers can refer to the maintenance plan for scheduled maintenance intervals, depending on the odometer reading or time interval, whichever comes first.
- For overdue maintenance items, the same time interval should be used for maintenance.
- It is recommended that the maintenance be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications by a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The maintenance schedule lists the maintenance items and travel time or distance based on the assumption that the vehicle is used as a normal means of transportation to carry passengers and goods that do not exceed the vehicle load limit.

CAUTION

- Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the requirements in the Warranty and Maintenance Service Manual of BYD.

Vehicle Servicing

- Pay attention to vehicle performance, sound changes, and visual evidence that indicates service is required.

Under any of the following circumstances, it is recommended to send the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection or repair as soon as possible:

- Motor start produces unusual noises.
- Coolant remains overheated, is stagnated or leaks.
- Motor jams and produces unexpected noise.
- The motor runs with excessive vibration.
- The motor fails to get started.
- Electric assembly leaks oil.
- Electric assembly emits odors.
- Power declines significantly.
- Water leaks from under the vehicle (A/C condensate is normal).
- Tire deflates; tires make excessive noises at turns; tire wear is uneven.
- Vehicle leads to one side when driving straight on a flat surface.
- Suspension unit movement leads to unusual noises.
- Loss of braking effect; sponge feeling on the brake pedal or clutch pedal; pedal almost contacts the floor; vehicle leads to one side when braking.
- Motor coolant temperature remains high.
- Battery capacity decreases significantly.
- High battery temperature or overheat protection persists, or there is no power output.
- "Please check the engine system" is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- There is obvious abnormal vibration or noise in the engine compartment.
- The engine leaks oil or water.
- The vehicle exhausts blue smoke or thick black smoke.
- A/C system fails to blow cold or hot air during refrigeration or heating.

WARNING

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

Corrosion Prevention

The most common causes of vehicle corrosion are:

- The underbody of the vehicle is covered in salt, dust, or moisture.
- The vehicle or some of its parts are exposed to high humidity and high temperature for a long time.
- The paint layer or underlayer is scratched by minor collision or by stones and gravel.

The following rules should be observed to prevent vehicle corrosion:

- Wash the vehicle frequently.
  - If driving on saline roads in winter or living in coastal areas, wash the landing area of the vehicle at least once a month, and clean the chassis and hubcap with a high-pressure water jet or steam to reduce corrosion. Wash the chassis thoroughly after winter.
  - After being used in near-coast environments, such as coastal roads, beaches, or seawater-exposed areas. (Note: Parts wetted by seawater need

to be thoroughly and deeply cleaned immediately with plenty of fresh water.)

- Wash the vehicle with clean water and neutral detergent.

- Check vehicle paint and trims.
  - Any chip or crack found on the paint must be repaired immediately to prevent corrosion. If fragments or cracks peel off from the metal surface, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- Check cabin interior.
  - Moisture and dust buildup under the carpet can cause corrosion. Check the undersides of carpets frequently to make sure these areas are dry.
  - Special care should be taken when the vehicle is transporting chemicals, detergents, fertilizers, salt, and other substances. Such substances should be kept in appropriate containers for transportation. If spillage or leakage is found, clean immediately and keep dry.
- Use fender liners.
  - Mudguard protects vehicles in saline areas or on gravel roads. The bigger and closer to the ground the mudguard, the better.
- Park in a well-ventilated and dry area.
- Keep the drain hole of the door unblocked to avoid water accumulation.

Paint Maintenance Tips

- Clean the vehicle in time.
- Do not perform secondary painting if there is no obvious scratches on the finish, so as to prevent mismatch or color incompatibility.
- When the vehicle is not used for a long period, it should be parked in a garage or a well-ventilated place, and special body cover should be used in winter. Choose a shady place for parking temporarily.
- Prevent strong impacts, knocks, or scratches on the paint. If the paint is scratched, dented or if it peels, it should be repaired in time, preferably by professional auto beauty provider.
- Do not touch the paint with a greasy hand or cloth. Do not place greasy tools or rub with organic solvents on the vehicle body so as to avoid chemical reactions.
- The vehicle must be waxed once a month or whenever water resistance performance of the vehicle degrades and be taken to an auto beauty provider for maintenance once every three months.
- High quality polish and wax must be used. If body finish is severely weathered, use a car cleaning polish in addition to the wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions. Chrome finish should be polished and waxed as well as painted finish.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is repainted and placed in a high-temperature paint waxing workshop, the vehicle's plastic bumper must be removed to avoid damage caused by high temperatures.

Exterior Cleaning

Exterior Cleaning

- The vehicle must be cleaned in time under the following circumstances, which can cause peeling of paint layer or corrosion of the vehicle body and parts:
  - Driving along the coast.
  - Driving on a road with anti-freeze.
  - Driving on roads covered with coal tar.
  - Resin, bird droppings, or insect carcasses are stuck on the vehicle.
  - Driving in areas with a large amount of smoke, soot, dust, iron filings, or chemicals.
  - The vehicle is visibly soiled by dust or mud.
  - After raining.

⚠ CAUTION

- Before washing the vehicle, ensure all doors, windows, panels, covers, auto wipers* are closed, and fold the side mirrors.
- Do not open the charge port door or fuel door to clean the interior.
- Do not wash the vehicle in hot and direct sunlight conditions.

Manual Vehicle Washing

Before washing the vehicle, ensure the water temperature does not exceed 60°C.

- Hose off loose dirt, including all mud or road salts at the bottom of the vehicle and on wheel pits.
- Wash the vehicle with a specialty neutral detergent according to its product instruction. Do not use strong alkaline or acidic cleaners, as well as volatile substance (gasoline, kerosene, or solvent). Soak a soft cloth with cleaning solution and gently wipe it down along the direction of the water flow. Do not wipe in a circular motion or horizontally.
- Rinse well—Dried washing agent forms markings. After washing the vehicle in hot weather, rinse all parts properly.
- Dry the vehicle with a clean soft towel to prevent stay water marks. In order to prevent scratching, do not rub or apply excessive force on the paint.

Washing vehicle with high-pressure washer

- When using high-pressure washer to wash the vehicle, follow the instructions:
  - Keep the nozzle at least 50 cm away from the vehicle surface.
  - The recommended pressure for the high-pressure water jet is less than 60 bar, and the maximum pressure is up to 100 bar.
  - Use a fan-shaped or mist spray pattern for the high-pressure washer (do not use a direct high-pressure jet spary).
  - Keep the nozzle in constant motion during rinsing. Avoid staying stationary in one spot.
  - Do not use a high-pressure water jet to clean the bottom of the vehicle.
  - Do not clean the front compartment directly with a high-pressure water jet. Use low-pressure water and a mild cleaner instead.
  - Avoid prolonged rinsing of the lower windshield to prevent water from entering the AC intake, which can damage the system.

- Avoid aim the sealing strips directly with high-pressure water, as this may cause water leakage into the vehicle interior.
- Avoid direct high-pressure washing of sensors (e.g., laser radars, cameras), as this may cause damage.

CAUTION

- Do not use any alkaline washing powder, soapy water, detergents, de-waxing detergents or volatile substance (gasoline, kerosene, or solvent).
- When cleaning the lights, avoid using alcohol-based products (like alcohol and windshield washer fluid), ketones (such as lacquer thinner and insect remover), or other chemical solvents (including gasoline, thinner, and carbon tetrachloride), as these can cause the light casings to crack.
- It is recommended that vehicles traveling in coastal or heavily polluted areas be washed once a day.
- Do not use blades or gasoline to remove hard dirt from the vehicle body. The plastic wheel trim is easily damaged by organic matter. If any organic matter splashes on the vehicle trim, remove it with water and check whether the trim is damaged. Replace any seriously damaged plastic wheel trim in a timely manner. Otherwise, the trim may fall from the wheel during vehicle movement and cause an accident.
- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to scrub the bumper.
- Clean polished metal parts with carbon cleaner and wax them regularly for protection.

CAUTION

- Be careful when cleaning the chassis to avoid cutting hands.

Automatic Vehicle Washing

When choosing an automated car wash service, be aware of certain types of brushes, unfiltered rinsing water, or machine-specific rinsing procedures that may scratch the paint and affect its gloss and durability, especially darker colors. Before washing the vehicle, consulting the service provider or check equipment instructions to understand which washing procedures are the safest for the paint finish.

CAUTION

- Disabling AVH function before using the automated wash equipment to wash the vehicle.
- Folding side mirrors before washing the vehicle. Unfolding side mirrors before driving.

Interior Cleaning

REMINDER

- Prevent direct water splash onto the dashboard or floor when washing the vehicle, as these may cause electrical faults.
- Do not wash the vehicle's floor to prevent corrosion.

Carpet

- Clean carpets with a good foam detergent.
- Firstly, use a vacuum cleaner to remove as much dust as possible.

Several types of foam detergents can be used. Some are in spray cans, and the others are powders or liquids, which produce foam when mixed with water. Clean the carpets with foam soaked sponge or a brush, scrubbing in a circular motion.

- Do not use plain water, and keep the carpets as dry as possible.

Seat Belt Maintenance

- The seat belts can be cleaned with neutral soapy water or lukewarm water.
- Scrub the seat belts with a sponge or soft cloth. Check the seat belts for excessive wear, tear, or cut marks.

WARNING

- Do not clean the seat belt with colorant or bleach. These substances may decrease the seat belt's strength.
- Do not use any seat belt that is not dry.

Doors and Windows

- Doors and windows can be cleaned with any ordinary detergent.
- Check the door brakes regularly. If a door brake lever is found with visible dust, wipe it with a wet soft cloth. Then apply 0.3 - 0.8 g of lubricant between the bracket and the pull rod riveting shaft, and between the pull rod and the sliding block.

CAUTION

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to

CAUTION

scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

A/C Control Panel, Vehicle Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches

- Clean the A/C control panel, vehicle speakers, dashboard, control panel and switches with a wet soft cloth.
- Wipe dust off gently with a clean soft cloth soaked in lukewarm water.

CAUTION

- Do not use any organic matter (such as solvents, kerosene, alcohol, gasoline) or acid-base solutions. These chemicals can cause discoloration, staining, or flaking.
- Please confirm that the detergent or polishing agent to be used does not contain the above substances.
- If a new liquid washing agent is used, do not splash it onto the interior surface of the vehicle, because it may contain the above substances. Clear any splashed liquid quickly.

Leather

- Leather trimmings can be cleaned with a neutral detergent for woolen.
- Use a soft cloth with a neutral detergent solution to wipe off the dust, and then use a clean, wet cloth to wipe the remaining detergent thoroughly.
- If leather gets wet, wipe it with a clean soft cloth. Dry the leather in a well-ventilated, cool place.

- For any questions about vehicle cleaning, please consult a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If dirt cannot be cleaned off using a neutral detergent, clean it with a detergent that does not contain organic solvents.
- Do not clean leather with any organic material such as volatile oil, alcohol, gasoline, or acid-base solution, as these will cause discoloration.
- Do not clean leather with a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, as these may scratch the fine patterns on the leather surface.
- Mold may grow on dirty leather trimmings. Special care must be taken to avoid oil stains, and trimmings must always be kept clean.
- Prolonged exposure to sunlight will cause leather to harden or shrink, so the vehicle should be parked in a shady and cool place, especially in the summer.
- In hot weather, avoid placing vinyl or waxy items on the trimmings, as these may stick to leather in high temperatures.
- Improper cleaning of leather trimmings may cause discoloration or spots.

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance Precautions

- If maintenance is to be carried out by the owner, be sure to follow the correct steps specified in this section.
- Note that improper and incomplete maintenance will affect the good use of the vehicle.
- This section only lists instructions on simple maintenance items that can be done by the owner. However, there are many items that must be done by qualified technicians with special tools.
- Special care must be taken in maintaining vehicles to prevent accidental injuries. Make sure to obey the followings:

CAUTION

- Beware of short circuits, as some circuits and vehicle components carry high current or voltage.
- If coolant overflows, wipe it with a dry cloth or tissue to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint and add coolant in time.
- Only specified spark plug can be used. The use of other spark plug may result in engine performance loss or damage, or radio interference to other electric products.
- Do not reuse the spark plug by cleaning it or adjusting the spark plug gap.

CAUTION

- If brake fluid overflows, rinse it with water to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the air filter removed, otherwise, the engine will be excessively worn.
- When replacing wiper blades, do not allow the wipers to scratch the glass surface.
- Before closing the engine cover, check whether any tool or wipe cloth is left in the engine compartment.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothes and tools at a certain distance from the rotating fan. It is recommended to take off the watch, ring, or tie.
- The engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and spark plug cover are hot after driving. Do not touch them and be careful to operate. The engine oil and other fluid may be hot too.
- To prevent burns, do not remove or loosen the expansion tank cap or remove the water pump, if the engine is very hot.
- Do not smoke in or near the vehicle to avoid sparks or open flames that may cause fire.
- Ensure the vehicle is turned off when working around the electric fan or radiator grill. If the engine coolant is hot or the A/C System is on with the vehicle powered on, the electric fan may automatically start.
- When working inside or under the vehicle, always wear goggles to protect your eyes against flying or falling objects or splashing liquid.

CAUTION

- As brake fluid may damage the skin or eyes, be careful when filling it. If your skin or eyes are exposed to brake fluid, immediately flush with clean water. Seek medical attention immediately if discomfort persists.

Self-check

The following items should be checked according to usage or specified mileage:

- Coolant level: The radiator expansion tank should be checked monthly.
- Windshield washer fluid: The residual amount of washer liquid in the tank should be checked monthly. When washer liquid is frequently used, the residual amount of liquid should be checked more often.
- Windshield wiper: Check the wiper condition monthly. If the wiper does not work, check it for wear, cracking, or other damage.
- Brake fluid level: Check the level monthly.
- Brake pedal: Check whether the brake pedal can be operated freely and whether the brake light switch limiting pad is aged or damaged.
- EPB switch - Check whether the switch is functional.
- Low-voltage battery - Check battery conditions and check for terminal corrosion monthly.
- A/C system - Check the operation of A/C units weekly.
- Tires - Check tire pressure monthly. Check tread wear and whether there are foreign bodies embedded.

- Windshield defrosters - Check the defroster vent monthly.
- Lights: Check the condition of headlights, position lights, tail lights, high mount brake light, turn signals, rear fog lights, brake lights and license plate light monthly.
- Doors: Check whether the tailgate and all other doors (including rear doors) can be opened freely and locked securely.
- Horn: Check whether the horn is functioning properly.

REMINDER

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

Lights

Headlight adjustment

- Headlights are aligned before vehicle delivery. If the vehicle carries heavy load frequently, headlights may need to be realigned. It is recommended to have the headlights aligned by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Fogging of lights

- Heavy rain, vehicle wash, and sudden changes in temperature and humidity can cause vehicle lights and side mirrors to fog up. If that happens, keep lights on for one hour, with the vehicle in motion or stationary, to reduce or remove the fog. After that, the lights should return to normal.
- Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider promptly if:
  - Fog inside the lights covers more than 30% of the internal surface area, with large droplets (soybean-sized) forming or visible water streaks.
  - Pooled water appears inside the lights.

CAUTION

- To prevent overheating and cracking, do not touch or contaminate the bulb glass when changing a light.
- When illuminated, headlights are hot and must not be covered, or they may disform or ablate.
- To prevent light housing craking, never use alcohol or alcohol-based solutions to clean tail lights.

Vehicle Storage

- If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time (more than a month), the following preparations should be made. Proper preparation helps prevent degradation and ensure easy use of the vehicle. If possible, park the vehicle indoors.
- Thoroughly clean and dry the body surface.
- Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure that carpets and mats are completely dry.
- Put the vehicle in Park.
- If the vehicle needs to be stored for a long time, jack up the vehicle body to keep the tires off the ground.
- When in normal state, the vehicle can be left in storage for a long of time with the low-voltage battery remain connected, as long as it has been fully charged before. In addition, avoid waking up the vehicle frequently, or

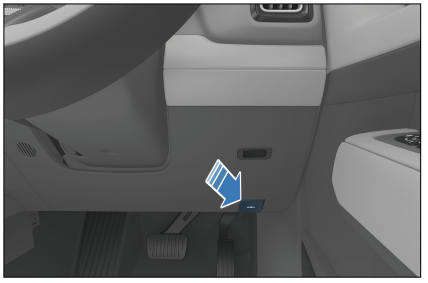
the battery SOC may deviate too much to start the vehicle.

- Pad the front wiper arm with a folded towel or cloth to keep it out of contact with the windshield.
- To reduce adhesion, apply silicone lubricant to seals of tailgate and all doors and body wax to the painted surface where the seals of tailgate and all doors meet.
- Cover the vehicle body with a breathable covering made of a "porous material", such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, can build up moisture and damage the paint.
- If possible, start the engine for a while regularly (preferably once every month). If the vehicle has been parked for a year or more, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for comprehensive maintenance.

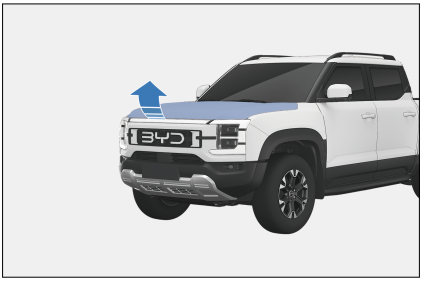
Hood

Opening the Hood

1. Pull the handle on the right under the dashboard twice. The hood unlocks and opens slightly.

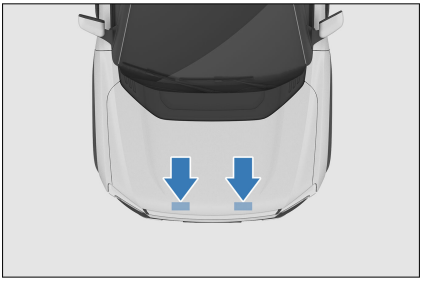


2. Raise the hood to an appropriate height; then it will automatically rise to the open state.



Closing the Hood

1. Pull the hood down to a certain height, push it down with a little force until it is half-locked, and then slowly press the blue area in the picture with both hands until the hood is fully locked and closed. Keep your hands at a certain distance and do not press the lines.



2. After closing the hood, check whether the latch is securely locked.

REMINDER

- Ensure that the hood is closed and locked firmly. Otherwise, the hood may suddenly open during driving, resulting in an accident.
- Do not force down the hood.
- Do not close the hood with one hand, as this may concentrate the force in one area and cause damage to the hood.

REMINDER

- Do not press the front edge of the hood to prevent damage to the vehicle.

Engine

Engine Maintenance Information

- If the engine do not be started for a long time, the canister may be in saturation. The canister desorption should be regularly completed to avoid the risk of fuel leakage.
- If the vehicle runs in EV mode for a long time, the engine may be automatically started by itself till the load of canister turns to be normal.

Engine Cylinder Cleaning

In severe cold areas, failure to start the engine may cause engine cylinder flooding, so it is necessary to carry out cylinder cleaning:

1. When the OK indicator stays on, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine is not running, manually switch to the "N" gear.
2. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning.

Engine Oil

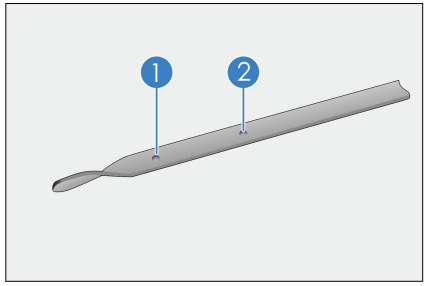
- Be sure to use engine oil with right specifications.
- When purchasing engine oil, check the oil specifications marked on the packaging container, which must conform to the using regulations for this vehicle.

Recommended engine oil

- Engine oil plays an important role in ensuring the performance and service life of the engine, so high-quality purified engine oil should be used. It is recommended that you choose BYD original engine oil.
- Engine oil consumption is related to driving habits, weather conditions, and road conditions. The engine oil consumption rate of new engines may be higher.

Check engine oil

1. Park the vehicle on a level road, start the engine till it reaches the normal working temperature, and then shut down the engine.
2. After shutdown for 10 minutes, remove the cover plate on the right side, pull out the oil dipstick, observe the oil level and oil condition, and check whether the oil level is between ① and ②. Add or replace oil as required.
3. Insert the oil dipstick back.



- When the low oil pressure warning light illuminates, please add oil in time.

WARNING

- Be careful not to splash oil on other vehicle components.

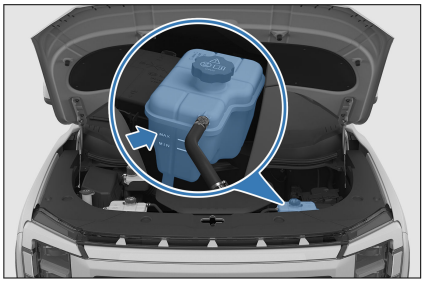
WARNING

- The engine oil, engine components, and exhaust system are high-temperature components, which may cause burns. Be careful and wear protective clothing when working in the front compartment.
- Long-time or frequent contact with used engine oil causes skin diseases. Use soapy water and clean water to wash the oil on the skin.

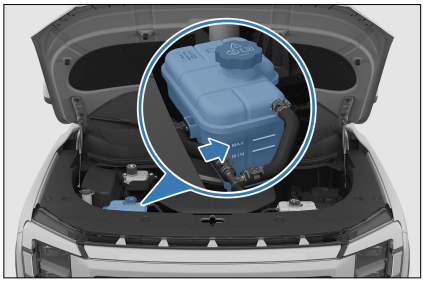
Cooling System

- It is required that the liquid level should be between the Maximum (MAX) and Minimum (MIN) marker lines of the expansion tank.

Engine coolant expansion tank



Motor controller coolant expansion tank



- Improper coolant may damage the cooling system.
- Use coolant of the same type as the one used originally. Fill up proper coolant into the cooling system based on the ambient temperature.
- Do not add any admixture.
- Different brands and types of coolant should not be mixed.

CAUTION

- Do not use tap water, so as to avoid cooling system damage.
- To avoid incompatible coolants and additives, do not apply additives like rust remover to the cooling system.

Radiator and Condenser

If the radiator and condenser are dirty or in uncertain conditions, it is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- Do not touch the radiator or condenser when the engine is hot to prevent scald.
- Do not operate by yourself, or the radiator and condenser may be damaged.

Electronic Cooling Fan

- If the vehicle is driven for extended periods in special conditions such as deserts, muddy roads, or waterlogged areas, foreign materials like sand or mud may enter the electronic cooling fan. It is recommended to clean and maintain the fan promptly. Failure to do so may cause abnormal vibration, unusual noise, reduced

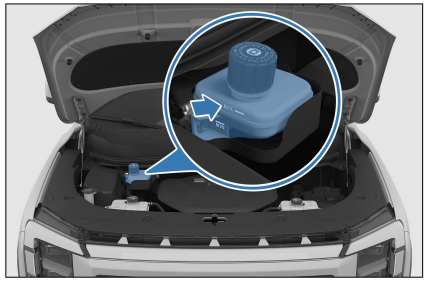
driving comfort, or even serious damage to the fan.

CAUTION

- It is recommended that cleaning and maintenance of the electronic cooling fan be performed by professionals at BYD authorized dealer or service provider. When using an air gun or water gun to clean the fan, observe the following precautions:
  - Before cleaning, ensure the vehicle is in a cold state (or has been parked for at least 30 minutes) and powered off.
  - When using a water gun, avoid directing water flow at the fan connectors and other wiring harness interfaces/connectors.
  - After cleaning, use a dry towel to promptly remove any residual water from the wiring harness interfaces/connectors.

Braking System

- Check the level in the fluid tank monthly, and change the brake fluid according to the travel time and mileage specified in Maintenance Schedule.
- Be sure to use the brake fluid of the same specifications as the original brake fluid, and different types of brake fluid must not be mixed.
- It is required that the level in the fluid tank should be between "MAX" (maximum level) and "MIN" (minimum level) marks.
- If the level is below the MIN mark, check if the braking system leaks and the brake friction blocks are worn.



- Impact of highland environment on brake fluid:
  - Increased altitude reduces atmospheric pressure, causing the air content in the brake fluid to increase. The brake system fault warning light ⓘ may light up and trigger a warning with . Before driving on the plateau, go to BYD authorized dealer or service provider or a professional maintenance agency to perform a standard air-bleeding operation for the IPB system.

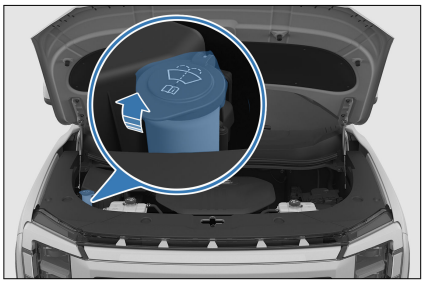
CAUTION

- If air-bleeding is not performed before the vehicle entering a plateau, the brake pedal may feel soft during driving, the braking distance may increase, and in severe cases, power output may be restricted. Drive with caution.

Washer

- The windshield washer reservoir is located behind the right headlight in the engine compartment. Remove the cover to check the fluid level in the reservoir.
- If the windshield washer is used frequently, the level of the washer reservoir should be checked more frequently.

- High quality windshield washer fluid should be added to improve stain removal and prevent freezing in cold weather.



- When refilling the washer fluid, use a clean cloth dipped in the windshield washer fluid to clean the windshield wiper blade. This helps keep the wiper blade in good condition.
- During normal use, check the liquid level of the windshield washer reservoir at least monthly.

CAUTION

- Do not inject vinegar-water solution into the windshield washer reservoir.
- It is recommended to use certified windshield washer fluid.

Fuel Filter

Replace the fuel filter according to the travel time and mileage specified in the maintenance schedule.

- When the fuel is dirty or contaminated, it is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 10,000 km or six months, as the filter is more likely to be blocked.
- It is recommended to replace the fuel filter at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Because there is pressure in the fuel system, if all the oil lines are not properly handled, the fuel may spill out and cause danger.
- If you have used more than one barrel of impure fuel, the filter should be changed earlier.
- If the filter is blocked by dirt, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection or replacement of the filter.

A/C System

- The A/C system is a closed system, and any important maintenance work should be performed by professionals from a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The following practices help ensure that the A/C system works effectively.
  - Check the radiator and A/C condenser regularly. Remove leaves, insects, and dust from the front surface. These deposits will hinder the air flow and reduce the cooling effect. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
  - In cold months, turn the A/C on once a week for at least 10 minutes to circulate the lubricating oil in the refrigerant unit.
- If A/C cooling efficiency decreases, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

CAUTION

- Whenever the A/C system is maintained, the maintenance station should use a refrigerant recycling system.
- The system can recycle refrigerant to avoid environmental pollution

CAUTION

caused by directly discharging refrigerant.

Wiper Blades Maintenance

The blade strip, made of synthetic rubber, is a vulnerable part. Various service environment of the vehicle and usage habits of drivers can damage the blades. Therefore, please observe the following to ensure the service life of blades and driving safety:

- Do not use a blade to remove ice from the windshield surface. Use a customized ice scraper.
- Do not scrape the windshield surface if it is dirty, greasy or waxy.
- Keep the windshield surface clean. Do not scrape dust, sand, insects, or foreign bodies on the windshield surface.
- During vehicle washing and body paint maintenance, there is no need to wax the windshield, as the wax layer reflects light in bad light, affecting the line of sight and driving safety. After washing the vehicle, rinse the blade with plain water, and use special windshield wax cleaner to remove the wax layer on the windshield.
- To prevent excessive water pressure from damaging the blades, do not wash the blades directly with a water jet.

Maintenance Rules

- Clean windshield and blade regularly (preferably once a week or once every two weeks).
- Wipe the wiper regularly (preferably once a day or once every two days) even if it doesn't rain.
- When using a blade to wipe the windshield, keep the windshield fully wet (when there is no rain, the washer liquid must be sprayed in advance).
- Clean the windshield with a special windshield washer fluid.
- Promptly clean mud and insect carcasses stuck to the windshield with a rag.
- When there are marks on the windshield caused by gravel, maintenance should be carried out timely (it is recommended that windshield repair resin products should be used and the windshield should be replaced if marks are too large or too many.)
- Replace the wiper blades regularly, preferably once every six months.
- When cleaning the windshield, raise the wiper arm in advance. The specific operation method is as follows:

  1. Go to infotainment touchscreen →Service to enable front wiper maintenance. The wiper is then rotated down.
  2. Grasp the upper end of the wiper arm and carefully lift the wiper arm and blade assembly.

Tire

- For safe driving, tires must be made and sized to fit the vehicle, with good tread and standard tire pressure.
- The following pages provide details on how to check tire pressure, damage to and wear of tires, and the operating method for tire transposition.

WARNING

- Using tires with excessive wear or insufficient/excessive pressure can result in accidents, severe injury, or death.
- Please follow all instructions in this manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Tire Inflation

- Keep tires properly inflated to provide the best combination of maneuverability, tread life, and driving comfort.
- Under-inflated tires can cause uneven tire wear, affect steerability and energy consumption, and are prone to leakage due to overheating.
- Over-inflated tires reduce riding comfort and are prone to damage from uneven roads. In severe cases, the risk of tire bursting poses severe threats to the safety of the entire vehicle. Over-inflation will also cause uneven wear and tear of tires, affecting tire service life.
- The vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure gauge. When tires are cold, you can decide whether to replenish tire pressure according to the tire pressure values displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Tire pressure should be measured while tires are at ambient temperatures. This means that it should be measured at least three hours after stop. If you must drive the vehicle before the tire pressure is measured, tires can still be considered at ambient temperatures as long as the traveled distance is not more than 1.6 km.
- It is normal that tire pressure readings measured when tires are hot (after travel of several kilometers) are 0.3–0.4 bar higher than those when tires are cold. In that case, do not deflate tires in order to achieve the specified cold tire pressure reading, otherwise, the tire pressure will be insufficient.

REMINDER

- The recommended cold tire pressure is indicated on the label affixed to the driver's door frame.

- Tubeless tires can self-seal punctures. However, as leakage is usually very slow, the leaks should be carefully identified as soon as the tire begins to depressurize.

Tire Inspection

- Whenever checking tire inflation, check tires for damage, foreign body piercing and wear.
  - Replace the tire if bumps, or tread or side damage are found. Tires must be replaced if any of the case happens.
  - Replace the tire if there are cracks on its side or if its fabric or cord can be seen.
  - Replace tires with excessive tread wear.



- Wear marks are cast inside tire treads. When the tread is worn at this point, a

band mark is shown across the tread, indicating the tread thickness is less than 1.6 mm. The adhesion of tires worn to this extent is very small on wet roads.

- When the tread is worn to the point where the wear mark is exposed, there is serious performance loss, and the tires must be replaced.

Maintenance

- In addition to proper inflation, proper wheel alignment also helps reduce tread wear.
- If uneven tire wear is found, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider and check the wheel alignment.
- Although the vehicle has been balanced in the factory, it may need to be re-balanced after running for a period of time.
- If there is some kind of continuous vibration at high vehicle speeds (above 80 km/h), but not at low vehicle speeds, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for tire checks.
- If a tire has been repaired, be sure to re-balance it.
- When installing a new tire or replacing a new wheel, always perform tire balancing.

CAUTION

- Improper wheel balancers can become loose and fall off, which damages the vehicle or surrounding objects during vehicle travel.
- Improper wheel balancers damage the aluminium rims of the vehicle. Therefore, it is recommended to use original wheel balancers.

Tire Rotation

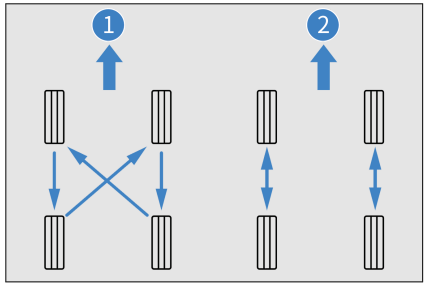
- In order to make tires wear the same and prolong their service life, it is recommended to regularly (no more than 10,000 km) check the wear of the tire inner and outer tread and rotate the tires and conduct four-wheel alignment, inspection and adjustment if necessary.
- Do not rotate tires when a spare tire is used for the vehicle.
- After tire replacement, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for tire pressure matching.

Directional tires and wheels

- When purchasing replacement tires, you may find that some tires are "directional", which can only be rotated in one direction. If directional tires are used, only the front and rear wheels can be swapped in tire rotation.
- Tire rotation for four-wheel drive vehicles is as shown:

  1. Non-directional tires and wheels

  2. Directional tires and wheels



WARNING

- Only the left and right wheels can be rotated due to the narrow front and wide rear tires on rear-wheel drive vehicles. If directional tires are used on rear-wheel drive vehicles, tire rotation is not accessible.

Replacing Tires and Wheels

- Original tires maximize performance, while providing the best combination of maneuverability, driving comfort and service life.
- Go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for replacement of original tires.
- Replacement of tires with different sizes, road ranges, rated speeds and maximum cold pressures (marked on the tire side) or mixed use of radial tires and diagonal tires can reduce braking ability, driving force (ground adhesion) and steering accuracy.
- The installation of unsuitable tires can affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may lead to accidents.
- Replace four tires at the same time whenever possible. If this is impossible or unnecessary, replace front or rear tires at the same time. Do not replace only one tire; otherwise it will seriously affect the maneuverability of the vehicle.
- ABS works by comparing wheel speed. When replacing a tire, use a tire of the same size as the original tire. The size and structure of the tire can affect wheel speed and may lead to uncoordinated system operation.
- If the wheel needs to be replaced, ensure that the specifications of the new wheel match those of the original wheel. New wheels are available for purchase at BYD authorized dealer or service providers. Please consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider before replacing the wheels.

WARNING

Please observe the following precautions to ensure proper vehicle maneuverability and control.

- Do not mix radial tires, bias belted tires, or diagonal ply tires on the vehicle.
- Do not use tires with dimensions other than those recommended by the manufacturer.

Fuses

All vehicle circuits are provided with fuses to prevent short circuit or overloading.

- The under-hood fuse box is located beside the left fender of the engine compartment.
  - Remove the upper cover of the front compartment fuse box, and turn over it to view the fuse box label.
- The dashboard fuse box is located in the shield under the dashboard.
- The positive fuse box is under the rear seat and above the low-voltage battery.

REMINDER

- Do not use fuses with amperage higher than the rated ampere value or any other object to replace fuses, as this can cause serious damage or even a fire.

REMINDER

- If a fuse blows, it is recommended to check or replace the fuse at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- Replacement of blown fuses with ones of higher amperage can significantly increase the likelihood of damage to the electrical system.
- If there is no spare fuse with an amperage matching the circuit, use a fuse with lower amperage instead.

07 WHEN FAULTS OCCUR

When Faults Occur.....258

When Faults Occur

Reflective Vest

In case of a sudden breakdown during driving, if you need to get out of the vehicle urgently to check for faults or handle accidents, always wear the reflective vest properly before that to ensure your safety.

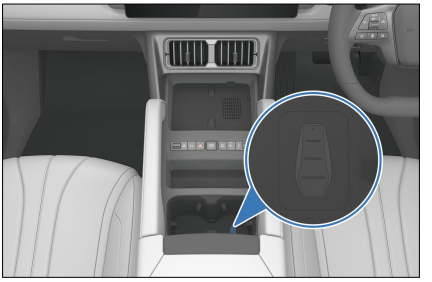
If Smart Key Battery is Exhausted

If the smart key indicator does not flash and the vehicle cannot be started using the start function, the smart key battery may be exhausted. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for battery change as soon as possible. In this case, you may start the vehicle in no power mode.

CAUTION

- Do not place the key in areas at high temperatures.
- Do not hit or slam the key with hard objects.
- Check for nearby radio stations, substations or airport radio transmitters that may interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
- After locking the vehicle and arming the anti-theft alarm system, keep the key away from the vehicle if you do not use the vehicle; otherwise the automatic card finding of the vehicle will consume the power of the low-voltage battery and the smart key.

1. Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.
2. Put the smart key close to the no-power sign on the auxiliary dashboard.
3. Press the START/STOP button and the brake pedal to start the vehicle.



If a High Voltage Fault Occurs

If the vehicle breaks down and the message "LVPS failure, please stop immediately and contact service shop" is displayed on the instrument cluster, immediately stop safely and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to deal with it.

If the Vehicle Cannot be Powered on

Simple Checks

Before the inspection, make sure that the vehicle is started according to the correct starting procedures (see "***P119***") and check whether the fuel is sufficient. At the same time, check whether the vehicle can be started with the spare key. If it can be started, the original key may have been damaged. In this case, have the key checked by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. If all keys cannot be used, the key or smart key system may fail. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

If the engine runs too slowly or fails:

1. Check whether the low-voltage battery connectors are tight.
2. If the battery connectors are normal, turn on the front interior lights. If the interior lights do not turn on or are dim, the low-voltage battery is low. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. If the interior lights are on but the engine does not start, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

If the generator drives the engine to run at normal speed but the engine cannot run:

1. Restart the vehicle.
2. If the engine cannot be started, the cause may be engine oil spillage due to repeated starts, failure of the BMS battery manager module, or failure of starting-related modules such as the generator module.
3. If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Start the Engine with Oil Spillage

- If the engine fails to start, repeatedly attempting to start it may lead to fuel leakage.
- If the engine is flooded, the following operations can be performed manually:
  1. When the OK indicator stays on, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine is not running, manually switch to the "N" gear.
  2. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning.
- If the engine has been started for 5 seconds and still cannot start, wait for several minutes and start it again.
- If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- If the engine fails to start continuously, and the prompt "Engine start failed, please drive to safe area and stop to check" is displayed on the instrument cluster, it is recommended not to restart the engine, otherwise the generator and wiring system will overheat.

If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving

- Maintain the lane position and gradually slow down the vehicle. Carefully drive the vehicle off the road to a safe place.
- Turn on the hazard warning light.
- Try to restart the engine.

If the Engine is Overheated

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light turns on and power loss is found, it indicates that the engine is overheated, and the following procedures should be followed:

1. Drive the vehicle away from heavy traffic and park it in a safe place. Turn on the hazard warning light, press the "P" button and ensure the EPB is engaged. If the A/C is used, turn off

the A/C and place a warning triangle at the corresponding position behind the vehicle according to the regulations.

2. If the "high engine coolant temperature" warning light turns on, stop the engine. If there is a sound and the coolant sprays out in the engine compartment, open the engine hood after the steam disappears. If no coolant is sprayed, confirm whether the cooling fan is working before and after the engine stops. If the fan is not working, turn off the power.

REMINDER

- To avoid personal injury, keep the hood closed until no coolant flows out. The flow of coolant indicates high pressure.

3. Check the radiator, hose and vehicle underneath for obvious coolant leakage.

WARNING

- When the engine is running, keep hands and clothes at a certain distance from the rotating fan and engine pulley.

4. In case of coolant leakage, stop the engine immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for help.
5. If there is no obvious leakage, check the coolant expansion tank. If coolant is insufficient, be sure to open the expansion tank cover after the engine coolant temperature drops to the normal value. When the engine is running, add coolant into the expansion tank to the upper scale mark, tighten its cover, and start the engine for two to three cycles (start the fan without turning on the A/C). After the coolant temperature drops to the normal value, check the coolant level again. If necessary, add more coolant to the appropriate scale. A serious loss of coolant indicates a leakage in the system. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection immediately.

WARNING

- To avoid serious injury caused by high-temperature steam and liquid ejection, do not open the expansion tank cover when the engine and radiator are hot.

If the Vehicle Needs Towing

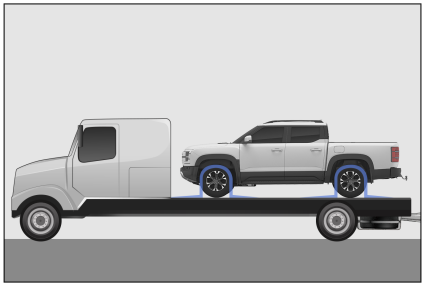
If the vehicle needs to be towed, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider, a professional towing service, or a roadside assistance service, if there is prior membership.

CAUTION

- The vehicle must not be towed by other vehicles using only ropes or chains.

Recommended towing method:

- Flatbed device
  - If the vehicle fails and needs towing, a flatbed is recommended. When the vehicle is being towed, keep its four wheels off the ground. Towing the vehicle on front or rear wheels alone may damage high-voltage components.



CAUTION

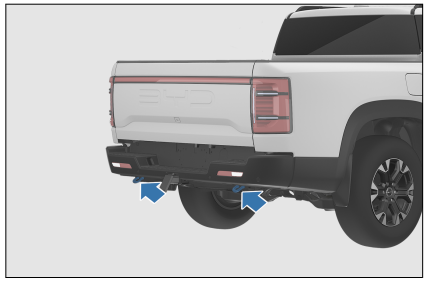
- When moving a vehicle on a flat trailer, make sure that the vehicle being moved is properly secured to prevent it from sliding back.
- It is recommended to use professional tie-down straps and tensioners, and employ the over-the-wheel method to secure the vehicle.
- When fixing the vehicle, do not pass the fixtures such as straps and ropes through the wheels or tie them on the chassis, suspension and other body parts to prevent damaging the vehicle.
- Ensure the vehicle's wheels are immobilized during transport to prevent potential damage.

Tow Eye

- The front tow eye is located below the front bumper, as shown in the figure.



- The rear tow eye is located below the rear part of the vehicle, as shown in the figure.



- If the vehicle is stuck and underpinning accident, please contact professional rescue or call the customer service hotline.
- In an emergency, when the vehicle is rescued or the tow eye is needed to rescue other trapped vehicles, please follow the following precautions to avoid vehicle damage or personal injury.
  - The towed vehicle must be controlled by a driver inside the cabin, with the steering and braking systems in normal conditions.
  - The towed vehicle must not carry any person except for the driver, nor tow another vehicle.
  - The towed vehicle must be in Neutral.
  - The width and weight of the towed vehicle must not be greater than those of the towing vehicle.
  - The distance between the towing and towed vehicles must be more than 4 meters but less than 10 meters.
  - Both towing and towed vehicles must have their hazard warning lights on.
  - The towing vehicle must be in good conditions, with a tow speed no more than 5 km/h.

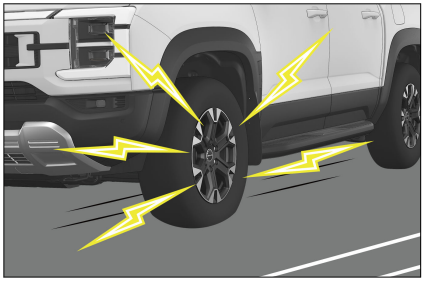
- Never use jerking actions to pull the vehicle.
- When towing, ensure the surroundings are clear and spacious, and that no one is near the towing device.
- When freeing the vehicle, control to make it travel in the direction of tow force. Dragging the vehicle from the side or vertically is prohibited.
- Only the vehicle tow eye can be used, and use it correctly.

REMINDER

- If the steering or braking system of the towed vehicle fails, contact a professional rescue or call the customer service number. Do not tow the vehicle directly.

If a Tire Goes Flat

- In case of a flat tire, slow down, keep straight, and drive off the busy road to a safe place.
- Park on solid, flat ground and avoid motorway forks.
- Press the "P" button to engage the EPB.
- Power off the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning light.



- Be sure to have all passengers get off the vehicle and ask them to go to a safe place away from crowded traffic.
- To prevent slipping, secure the vehicle by wedging the tire diagonally against the flat tire.

CAUTION

- Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Even a short distance of driving with a flat tire can cause irreparable damage.

In-Vehicle Tools

The tools are stored under the seatback of the rear seats and in the glove box in front of the front passenger's seat. In-vehicle tools include reflective vest, warning triangle, jack, jack rocker, wheel wrench, and lug nut cap removal clamp.

REMINDER

- In an emergency where you need to service the vehicle yourself, you must know how to use these in-vehicle tools and their locations.

Placing the warning triangle

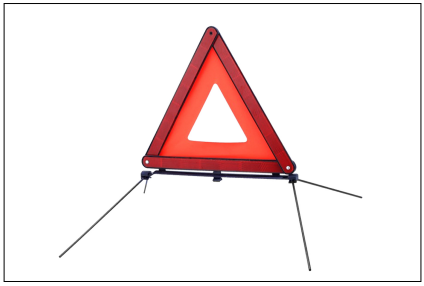
REMINDER

- When parking for repair, place the warning triangle correctly as per local regulations. The red side of the triangular warning sign should face the oncoming vehicles to warn them to avoid danger.
- After using the warning triangle, put it back for future use.

The warning triangle is used to warn vehicles coming from behind and to avoid collisions due to high speed or late braking.

How to use the warning triangle:

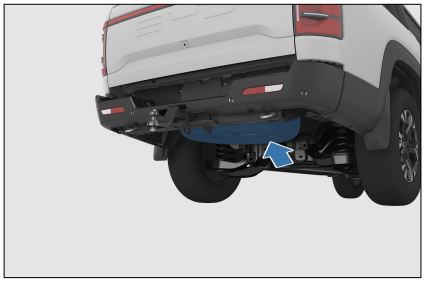
1. Take the warning triangle out of its box.
2. Attach the ends to form a triangle.
3. Mount the supports as shown.



Using the Spare Tire

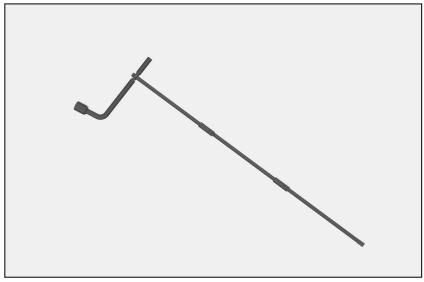
Spare Tire Position

- The spare tire is located below the crossbar under the rear of the cargo box. Adjust the spare tire lifter with jack rockers and wrench to lower the spare tire slowly, and then take it out.



Take out the spare tire

1. Take out the tool kit, assemble the three-section rocker, and insert the thinner end into the hole of the wrench.

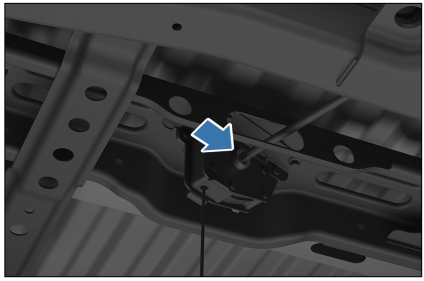


2. Thread the thicker end of the three-section rocker diagonally at about 22° through the hole on the upper right of the license plate at the rear bumper.

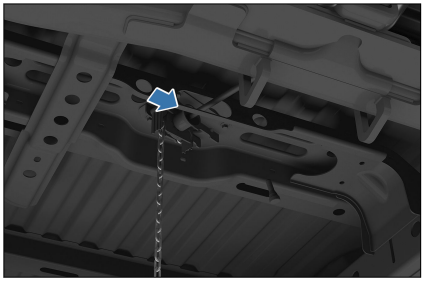


3. Insert it into the knob's opening of the spare tire lifter.

Configuration 1 (Wire rope)

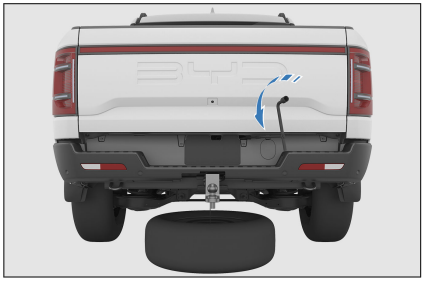


Configuration 2 (Chain)



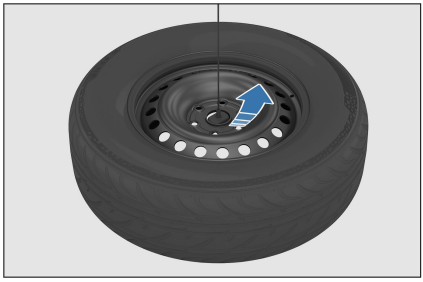
4. Rotate the rocker counterclockwise manually to lower the spare tire down.

5. When the spare tire is lowered to the ground, continue rotating the rocker counterclockwise until it can no longer be turned, which indicates that the wire rope/chain is fully released.



6. Tilt the holding bracket of the spare tire lifter to remove it from the wheel hub. The spare tire is available to be used.

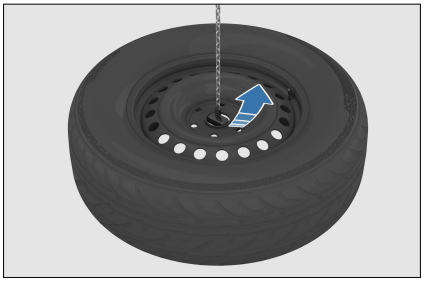
Configuration 1



WARNING

- After the spare tire is lowered to the ground, inspect the lower end of the wire rope for broken strands. If broken strands are detected, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately for inspection and handling.

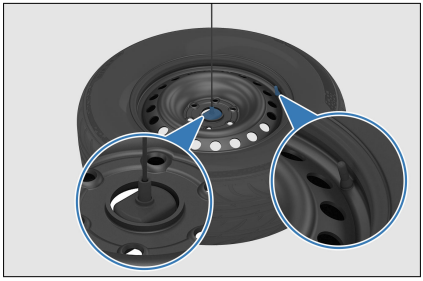
Configuration 2



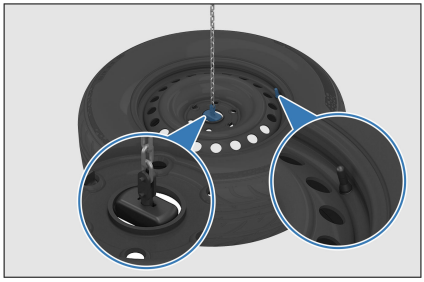
Store the flat tire/spare tire

1. Place the removed tire on a flat surface with the valve facing up, and ensure that the holding bracket is fully inserted into the center hole of the wheel hub.

Configuration 1

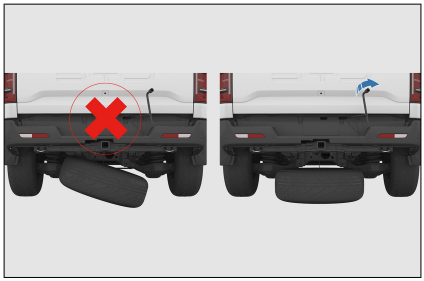


Configuration 2

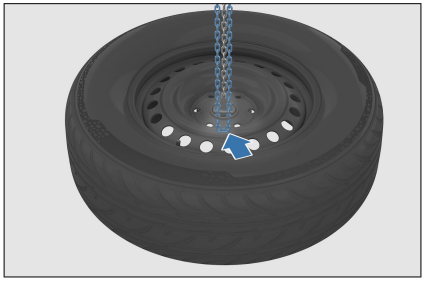


2. Rotate the rocker clockwise manually to tighten the wire rope and lift the tire.

While lifting the tire, observe its position to ensure it stays horizontal and does not touch any surrounding part. If the tire tilts significantly during lifting, manually adjust its position to ensure it remains level, and then tighten the wire rope/ chain.



3. If the vehicle's spare tire is configured with a chain, ensure the chain passes through the center hole of the wheel rim during the lifting process.



4. Tightening the tire

Configuration 1: Raise tire until seated against the frame. Once torque increases sharply, rotate the rocker a further 1.5 turns to tighten. Alternatively, ensure the wire rope is completely retracted and the tire is secure, with a torque of 55 N·m (achieved by applying 350 N / 35 kgf / 78 lb of force at the bend of the rocker).

Configuration 2: Ensure the chain is completely retracted, with a torque of 55 N·m (achieved by applying 350 N / 35 kgf / 78 lb of force at the bend of the rocker).

4. Push, pull, and rotate the tightened tire to check for looseness. If loose, repeat the previous steps to re-tighten it.

5. Store the tools in their original positions.

WARNING

- Failure to follow the tire storage steps or insufficient tightening may cause the tire to become loose, leading to wire rope breakage and tire detachment, which can result in personal injury or even death.

CAUTION

- Use the in-vehicle wheel wrench to tighten the retaining nut of the flat tire.

Replacement of the Spare Tire

Wedging the wheel

1. Wedge the tire diagonally against the flat tire to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

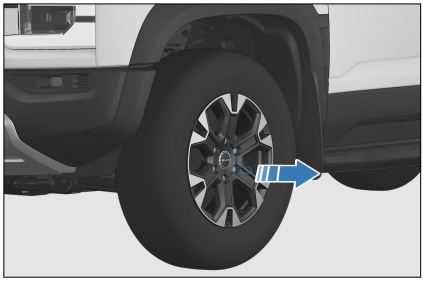
- To do so, place the wedges in front of the front wheels or behind rear wheels.



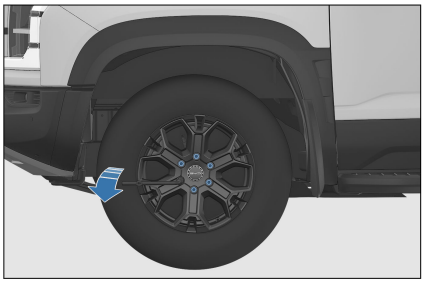
Loosening lug nuts

2. Remove the decorative cover of the lug nut with the lug nut cover removal clip in the vehicle tools.

3. Loose all the lug nuts on the flat tire.



- Loosen lug nuts before raising the vehicle.
- Loosen the nuts by turning them anticlockwise.



REMINDER

- Hold the end of the wrench and press it down, and do not allow it to slide off the nut.
- Do not remove the nut, and just loosen it by one to two turns.

WARNING

- Do not apply motor oil or lubricant on bolts or nuts. Otherwise, loose nuts would cause the wheel to come off, causing serious accidents.

Position the jack

4. Place the jack at a proper jacking point as shown in the picture.

- Ensure that the jack is placed on a flat and solid ground.



WARNING

- When you jack up the vehicle, observe the following rules to reduce the likelihood of injury:
  - When you jack up the vehicle, do not have any part of your body under the vehicle. Otherwise, personal injury may be caused.
  - Do not power on the vehicle when it is being jacked up.

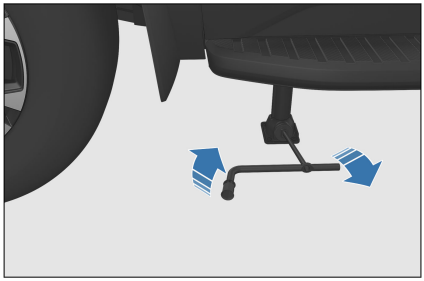
WARNING

- Park the vehicle on flat and solid ground, activate the parking controls and put the gearshift lever in Neutral. If needed, secure the vehicle by wedging the tire diagonally against the flat tire.
- Ensure that the jack is placed at the correct jacking point. Jacking up the vehicle at an incorrect jack point will damage the vehicle or tip the vehicle off the jack, causing personal injuries.

Jacking up the vehicle

5. After confirming that the vehicle has no passenger onboard, jack up the vehicle to a height allowing for spare tire installation.

- Installing a spare tire requires more distance from the ground than removing a deflated one.



- When lifting the vehicle, insert the jack rocker into the jack (for loose coupling) and rotate it clockwise.
- When the jack is in contact with the vehicle and begins to lift the vehicle, verify again that the jack is in the correct position.

WARNING

- Never get under a vehicle supported only by a jack.

Replacing wheels

6. Remove wheel nuts, replace the tire, and place the replaced tire aside. Roll the spare tire to the mounting position, with the bolts aligned with the wheel holes. Then hold up the wheel until the top bolt passes through the screw hole.

- Rotate the tire and push it back until all other bolts pass through the holes.
- Before installing the wheel, remove corrosion from the mounting surface with a wire brush or the like.

CAUTION

- When you install a wheel, ensure that the mounting position is contacted well, otherwise loose lug nuts will cause the wheel to come off during driving.

Reinstalling lug nuts

7. Reinstall all lug nuts.

- When reinstalling lug nuts, tighten the lug nuts by hand to the greatest extent, then push the wheel backward and tighten the lug nuts further.

WARNING

- Do not apply engine oil or lubricant on bolts or nuts, as this can over-tighten the nuts and thus damage the bolts. The loose nuts so caused would lead the wheels to come off, causing serious accidents.
- If there is engine oil or lubricant on the bolt or nut, it must be removed.

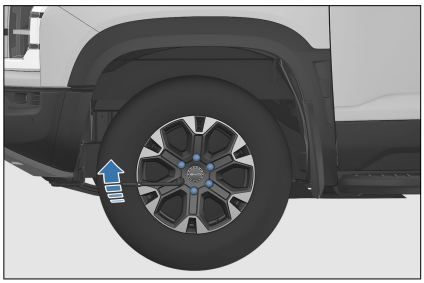
WARNING

- The conical surface of the nut should be inward. If the nut is installed reversely, it may cause serious accidents.

Lowering the vehicle

8. Lower the vehicle completely, tighten the lug nuts, and install the decorative cover for lug nuts.

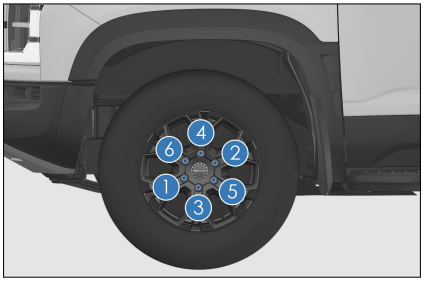
- Lower the vehicle by twiddling the jack lever counterclockwise.



REMINDER

- Tighten the nuts with a lug nut wrench. Do not use other tools or any lever other than your hands, such as hammers, tubes, or feet.
- Make sure the wrench is securely clamping around the nut.

- Tighten the nuts in the sequence shown, each a bit a time. Repeat the action until all nuts are tightened.



CAUTION

- Before lowering the vehicle, make sure that no part of your body and no person in the vicinity of the vehicle will be injured by the vehicle's descent.
- Lug nuts must be torqued to 140 N · m after wheel replacement. Otherwise, loose nuts would cause the wheel to come off, causing serious accidents.

After wheel replacement

9. Check the pressure of the replaced tire.

- Adjust the tire pressure to the specification. If the pressure is lower than the specification, slowly drive to a nearby service station to inflate the tire to the correct pressure value.
- Be sure to mount the tire valve cap; otherwise dust and moisture will enter the valve stem and cause air leakage. If the valve cap is lost, use a new one as soon as possible.

10. Properly store all tools, the jack, and the flat tire.

- Use a torque wrench to tighten all lug nuts to the specified torque value after replacing the wheel.
- Have the flat tire repaired by a technician.

REMINDER

- Before driving, you should verify that all tools, jacks, and flat tires are kept in a storage area to reduce the possibility of personal injury in case of collision or emergency braking.
- Observe the maximum speed limit of 80km/h when driving with the spare tire.
- Do not use the spare tire for a long time. It is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for tire repair and replacement as soon as possible.

08 SPECIFICATIONS

Vehicle Data..... 272
Information..... 277
Declarations of Conformity..... 280

Vehicle Data

Vehicle Data

Dimensions

Item	Parameter
Length (mm)	5457
Width (mm, excluding side mirrors)	1971
Height (mm)	1925
Wheelbase (mm)	3260
Front track (mm)	1660
Rear track (mm)	1660
Front overhang (mm)	927
Rear overhang (mm)	1270
Approach angle (°)	31
Departure angle (°)	19.3 (with trailer crossmember)

Vehicle mass

Item	Parameter	
Configuration	A	B
Curb weight (kg)	2775	2710
Front axle load (kg)	1520	1475
Rear axle load (kg)	1255	1235
Maximum allowable total mass (kg)	3500	3500
Front axle load at maximum allowable total mass (kg)	1685	1595
Rear axle load at maximum allowable total mass (kg)	1815	1905
Maximum front axle weight (kg)	1700	1651

Item	Parameter	
Maximum rear axle weight (kg)	1900	1927
Number of occupants (persons)	5	5

Engine

Item	Parameter	
Configuration	A	B
Engine model	BYD487ZQF	BYD476ZQF
Engine type	Turbocharged engine	In-cylinder direct injection, inline four-cylinder, four-stroke, spark-ignition, water-cooled, double overhead camshaft
Displacement (mL)	1997	1497
Rated power of engine (kW/rpm)	200/5000	143/5400
Max. net engine power (kW/rpm)	180/5000	135/5400
Max. torque (N · m/rpm)	380/1600-4000	260/2000-4800
Emission standard	Light-duty Euro 6d	

Drive motor

Item	Parameter	
Configuration	A	B
Model	Front: TZX220XYAB Rear: TZ200XSV	Front: TZ220XYV Rear: TZ200XSV
Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Drive type	Four-wheel drive	Four-wheel drive
Rated power/speed/torque (kW/rpm/N·m)	Front: 80/5093/150 Rear: 70/4775/140	Front: 80/5093/150 Rear: 70/4775/140

Item	Parameter	
Peak power/revolving speed/torque (kW/rpm/N · m)	Front: 200/18000/360 Rear: 150/16000/340	Front: 170/18000/310 Rear: 150/16000/340

Economy and power performance

Item	Parameter	
Fuel consumption (L/100km)	10.5 (WLTC)	9.6 (WLTC)
Maximum design speed (km/h)	180	
Maximum gradeability (%)	60	

Wheels and tires

Item	Parameter	
Configuration	A	B
Tire specification	265/65 R18	
Tire pressure (bar)	No load and half load: Front wheel: 2.5; rear wheel: 2.5 Full load: Front wheel: 2.5; rear wheel: 2.9	
Wheel dynamic balance requirement	When installing the adhesive balance weight, the wheel assembly shall not be greater than 90g per side. Only one balance weight is allowed per side. After the installation, comfirm that the remaining dynamic imbalance is less than 10g (single-side reading on the dynamic balancer).	When installing the adhesive balance weight, the final assembly of wheels shall not be greater than 80g. After the installation, the imbalance shall be less than 10g·cm (single side display of dynamic balancer)

Wheel alignment values (at curb weight)

Item	Parameter (no load)
Front camber (°)	-0.17±0.5
Front toe-in (°)	0.11±0.08 (side)
Kingpin caster angle (°)	5.12±0.75

Item	Parameter (no load)
Rear camber (°)	0.89±0.5
Rear wheel toe-in (°)	-0.13±0.08 (side)

Braking system

Item	Parameter
Free stroke of brake pedal (mm)	1-5
Standard thickness of front brake disc (mm)	34
Minimum thickness of front brake disc (mm)	32
Standard thickness of rear brake disc (mm)	25
Minimum thickness of rear brake disc (mm)	23
Standard thickness of front friction plate (mm)	10
Minimum thickness of front friction plate (mm)	2
Standard thickness of rear friction plate (mm)	12
Minimum thickness of rear friction plate (mm)	2

High-voltage battery

Item	Parameter
Type	Lithium iron phosphate battery
Rated capacity of high-voltage battery (Ah)	81.1

Seats

Item	Parameter
Forward and backward moving spaces for front seats (seat cushion depth measured)	60 mm forward from the end
Seatback angle of front seats (cushion depth measured)	24°
Normal service conditions of front seatbacks	24°

Item	Parameter
Forward and backward moving spaces for rear seat (seat cushion depth measured)	No slide rail
Seatback angle of rear seats (cushion depth measured)	27°
Normal service conditions of rear seatbacks	27°

Recommended oil/fluid types and amount

Item	Parameter	
Configuration	A	B
Engine oil type	C5 0W-20	0W-20 and meets the SP specification
Engine oil amount (L)	Initial fill: 6.1±0.1 Replace engine oil filter: 5.6±0.1 Do not replace engine oil filter: 5.3±0.1	Initial fill: 5.0 Replace engine oil filter: 4.5±0.15 Do not replace engine oil filter: 4.2±0.15
EHS special transmission gear oil type	EHSF-2LV	EHSF-2LV
EHS special transmission gear oil amount (L)	5.7±0.1	5.7±0.1
EHS differential gear oil type	Castrol GL-5-80W-90; Total GL-5-80W-90	Castrol GL-5-80W-90; Total GL-5-80W-90
EHS differential gear oil amount (L)	1.3±0.1	1.3±0.1
Rear drive electric assembly gear oil type	Castrol BOT384	Castrol BOT384
Rear drive electric assembly gear oil amount (L)	1.3±0.1	1.3±0.1
Brake fluid type	HZY6	HZY6
Brake fluid amount (L)	1.25±0.2	1.15±0.2
Engine coolant type	Ethylene glycol antifreeze (-40°C)	Ethylene glycol antifreeze (-40°C)
Engine coolant amount (L)	9.5±0.5	8.8±0.5

Item	Parameter	
Motor and motor controller coolant type	Ethylene glycol antifreeze (-40°C)	Ethylene glycol antifreeze (-40°C)
Motor and motor controller coolant amount (L)	10.7±0.5	10.1±0.5

CAUTION

- The recommended oil types have been tested and approved by BYD. Using other oil types may compromise vehicle performance, and could cause malfunctions or damage to components.

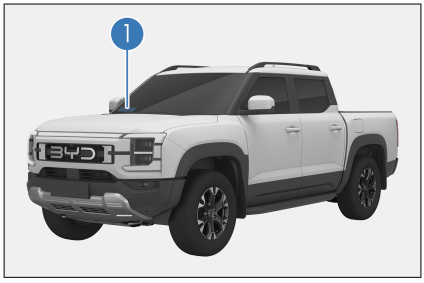
Information

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Position of VIN attached

① Attached on the sheet metal groove in the lower right corner of the dashboard.



Positions of VIN engraved

② Engraved on the outer side of the vehicle's right front longitudinal beam



After connecting the VDS, the VIN can be found in the upper right corner of the screen for the corresponding model. For details, please refer to the VDS operation manual.

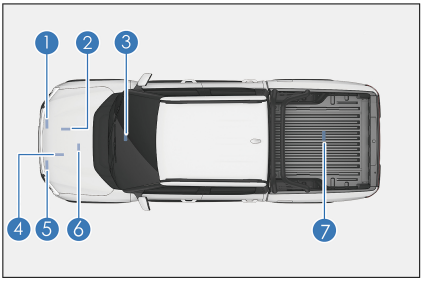
Model and Serial Number of Engine and Drive Motor

① The model and serial number of the front drive motor are attached on the upper right part of the hood's inner panel

② The model and serial number of the engine are attached on the engine camshaft box.

③ The model and serial number of front drive motor are engraved on the front drive motor housing.

④ The model and serial number of the engine are attached on the engine intake manifold.



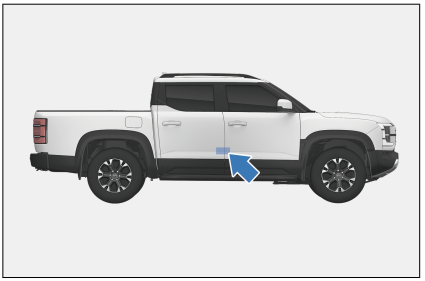
⑤ The model and serial number of the rear drive motor are attached on the upper left part of the hood's inner panel

⑥ The model and serial number of the engine are engraved on the assembly cylinder.

⑦ The model and serial number of rear drive motor are engraved on the rear drive motor housing.

Vehicle Nameplate

The vehicle nameplate is located under the right B-pillar.



Warning Labels

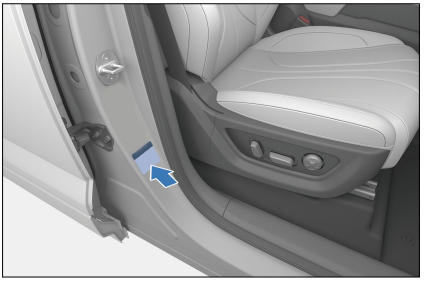
The airbag warning label is printed on the left sun visor.



WARNING

- Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

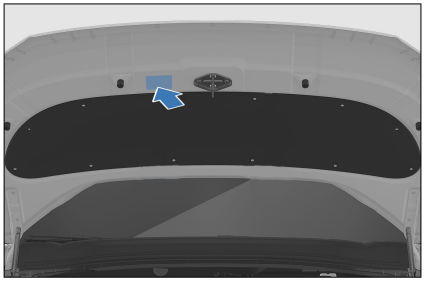
The tire pressure label is attached below the right B-pillar lock ring.



The child protection lock sign is engraved on the metal sheet surface on the left/ right rear door.



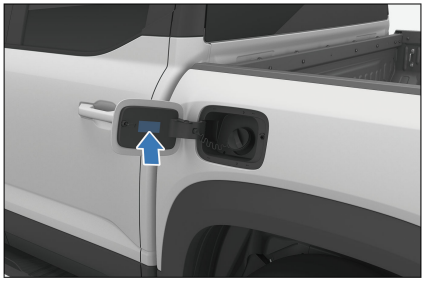
The A/C system and cooling fan label is affixed to the hood's inner panel.



The gasoline indication label is attached on the inner side of the fuel door.



The label forbidding luggage on the back is attached on rear seats.



The charging warning label is attached on the inside of the charge port door.



Warnings on Support Mechanisms*

Support mechanisms on this vehicle can be dangerous. Do not disassemble or service them yourself. Labels on these products are defined as follows:

Lable	Definition
	Warning
	Pressurized cylinder
	Refer to owner's manual
	No open flame
	Not to be serviced by users

Lable	Definition
	Recycle separately (Note: Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.)
	No shaking or cranking

Transponder Mounting

The transponder mounting position is located in the upper left of the front windshield.



CAUTION

- Do not overlap the sticker transponder with the glass frame or other objects.

Declarations of Conformity

Declarations of Conformity

Smart Key

	Uzbekistan Model: D0-92/D1-92
	EU countries Model: D0-92/D1-92

	Australia/New Zealand Model: D0-92/D1-92
	Brazil Model: D0-92/D1-92 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorized systems.
	Japan Model: D0-315/D1-315
	The United Arab Emirates Model: ER30895/24

Corner MmWave Radar

	EU countries Certificate ID: T.2021.08.0001
	Australia/New Zealand According to the Australian Radiocommunication standards, product type can be approved by self-declaration and no official type approval number is granted. There is a mutually recognized mark of compliance between Australia and

	New Zealand, which means RCM is also applicable in New Zealand.
E24 10R-06 XXXX	EU R10 Certificate ID: E1*10R06/03*10307*02
Front MmWave Radars Certification	
CE	EU countries Certificate ID: T.2022.01.0005
	Australia/New Zealand According to the Australian Radiocommunication standards, product type can be approved by self-declaration and no official type approval number is granted. There is a mutually recognized mark of compliance between Australia and New Zealand, which means RCM is also applicable in New Zealand.
E24 10R-06 XXXX	EU R10 Certificate ID: E1*10R06/03*10232*02
Tire Pressure Monitoring Module	
	Australia/New Zealand Certificate ID: RCMP22108 001
ANATEL	Brazil Certificate ID: 13741-22-13003 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorized systems.

TDRA هيئة تنظيم الاتصالات والحكومة الرقمية TELECOMMUNICATIONS AND DIGITAL GOVERNMENT REGULATORY AUTHORITY	The United Arab Emirates Certificate ID: ER01586/214

Key High-frequency Receiver Module Certification	
TDRA هيئة تنظيم الاتصالات والحكومة الرقمية TELECOMMUNICATIONS AND DIGITAL GOVERNMENT REGULATORY AUTHORITY	The United Arab Emirates Certificate ID: ER30897/24

Numerics

12V Auxiliary Power..... 219

A

A/C Control Panel, Vehicle Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches..... 242
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)..... 187
Adaptive Cruise Control..... 146
Adaptive Front Light (AFL)..... 180
Adjusting Front Seat with Power.... 63
Adjusting Rear Seat Head Supports 65
Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually*..... 68
Airbag Overview..... 15
Anti-lock Braking System..... 196
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 30
Around View Monitor (AVM)*..... 188
Automatic Anti-glare Rearview Mirror*..... 71
Automatic emergency braking..... 159
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)..... 135
Automatic Vehicle Washing..... 241

B

Blind spot detection..... 173
Brake Fluid..... 249
Break-in Period..... 100

C

Carpet..... 241
Carrying Luggage..... 114
Cases When Airbags May Not Be Deployed..... 19
Center Console Cubby..... 216
Charge Port Immobilizer System... 94
Charging Precautions..... 81
Charging Safety Warnings..... 80
Child Presence Detection (CPD)*. 184
Child Protection Lock..... 61
Child Restraint System Anchorages 22
Child Restraint Systems..... 22
Corrosion Prevention..... 238

D

Data Collection and Processing..... 31
Declarations of Conformity..... 280
Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System..... 185
Discharging..... 90
Discharging Instructions..... 89
Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities..... 33
Door Bins..... 215
Door open warning..... 174
Doors and Windows..... 242
Driver Monitoring Systems*..... 183
Driving..... 120
Driving Precautions..... 137
Driving Safety Precautions..... 110
Driving Safety System..... 193
Driving with Low Fuel Consumption 129

E

Electronic Cooling Fan..... 248
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).... 132
Emergency Lane Keeping Assist.. 170
Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) Function..... 12
Emergency Unlocking of the Charge Port..... 96
Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key..... 59
Engaging EPB Manually..... 133
Exterior Cleaning..... 240

F

Fire Prevention..... 117
Folding Rear Seats..... 64
Forward Collision Warning..... 156
Front 12V Power Outlet..... 219
Front Cross Traffic Alert..... 162
Front Cross Traffic Braking..... 164
Front Far Side Airbag..... 17
Front Interior Light Switches..... 76
Front Seat Cup Holder..... 216
Front-Row USB Ports..... 218
Fuel Selection..... 112

G

Gear Shift Controls..... 130
General Charging Troubleshooting 83
Glasses Case..... 216
Glove Box..... 215

H

Hazard Warning Light Switch..... 76
Head-up Display (HUD)..... 182
High-Voltage Battery..... 96

I

If a Tire Goes Flat..... 262
If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving..... 259
Indicator and Warning Light..... 37
Installing Child Restraint Systems. 23
Intelligent Cruise Control..... 153
Intelligent Speed Limit Control.... 156
Interior Cleaning..... 241
Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode..... 25

K

Keys..... 50

L

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)..... 167
LCD Instrument Cluster..... 36
Leather..... 242
Light Switches..... 72
Lights..... 245
Loading the Cargo Box..... 115
Locking/Unlocking the Tailgate*... 57
Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key..... 54
Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key 55
Low-Voltage Battery (12 V)..... 98

M

Maintenance Plan..... 224
Maintenance Schedule (BYD476ZQF) 229
Maintenance Schedule (BYD487ZQF) 224
Manual Vehicle Washing..... 240

O

Opening and Closing the Hood.... 246
Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts..... 47

P

Paint Maintenance Tips..... 239
Parking Assist System..... 190
Power Window Switches..... 74

R

Rear collision warning..... 175
Rear cross traffic alert..... 177
Rear cross traffic braking..... 179
Rear-Row USB Ports..... 218

Recycling the High-Voltage Battery 98
Refueling..... 112
Regular Maintenance Precautions.... 237
Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning..... 117

S

Safety Handles..... 217
Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life..... 113
SD Card Slot..... 218
Seat Belt Maintenance..... 242
Seat Belt Overview..... 12
Seat Precautions..... 62
Seat Side Airbags..... 17
Seat Ventilation/Heating*..... 63
Seatback Pockets..... 216
Self-Maintenance Precautions..... 243
Side Curtain Airbags..... 18
Smart Access and Start System..... 60
Smart Charging..... 88
Snow Chains..... 139
Specifications..... 272
Starting the Vehicle..... 119
Steering Assist Mode Settings..... 69
Steering Wheel Switches..... 66
Suggestions for Vehicle Use and Storage..... 111
Sun Visor..... 217

T

Target SOC Setting*..... 93
Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)..... 165
Transponder Mounting..... 280

U

Using AC Charging Piles..... 86
Using DC Charging Piles*..... 87
Using Mode 2 Charging Cable..... 84
Using Seat Belts..... 12
Using the Spare Tire..... 263

V

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 277
Vehicle Servicing..... 237
Vehicle Storage Instructions..... 245

W

Warning Labels..... 278
Warning Light/Indicator Description 40
Window Control Switch on Passenger Side..... 75
Windshield Washer..... 249
Windshield Wipers and Washer..... 69
Winter Driving Precautions..... 138
Wireless Phone Charger*..... 219
Working Mode Precautions of Dual-Mode System..... 28
Working Mode Selection of Dual-Mode System..... 27

Abbreviations

Abbreviations

Terminology	Full Name	Terminology	Full Name
ISOFIX	International Standards Organization Fix	ECO	Economy
SPORT	Sport	EDR	Event Data Recorder
SOC	State of Charge	EPB	Electronic Parking Brake
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control	TSR	Traffic Sign Recognition
FCW	Forward Collision Warning	LDA	Lane Departure Assist
LDW	Lane Departure Warning	LDP	Lane Departure Prevention
ELKA	Emergent Lane Keeping Assist	BSD	Blind Spot Detection
DOW	Door Open Warning	RCTB	Rear Cross Traffic Braking
DMS	Driver Monitoring System	AVAS	Acoustic Vehicle Alert System
ABS	Antilock Braking System	VDC	Vehicle Dynamics Control
TCS	Traction Control System	HHC	Hill Hold Control
HBA	Hydraulic Brake Assist	CDP	Controller Deceleration Parking
HDC	Hill Descent Control	MCB	Multi-Collision Brake
MAX	Maximum	MIN	Minimum
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number		